VOCABULARY
& SPELLING
SUCCESS
VOCABULARY & SPELLING SUCCESS IN 20 MINUTES A DAY

4th Edition
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INTRODUCTION</th>
<th>vii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 1</td>
<td>Pretest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 2</td>
<td>Vocabulary Terms and Language Origins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 3</td>
<td>Spelling Rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 4</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 1—Prefixes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 5</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 2—Suffixes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 6</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 3—Learning Roots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 7</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 4—More Roots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 8</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 5—Foreign Language Terms Used in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 9</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 6—Business Terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 10</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 7—Technology Terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 11</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 8—Legal Terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 12</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 9—Terms Relating to Language and Literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 13</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 10—Short Words That Mean a Lot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 14</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 11—Adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 15</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 12—Acronyms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 16</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 13—Commonly Tested Words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 17</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 14—More Commonly Tested Words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 18</td>
<td>Vocabulary List 15—Philosophical Terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 19</td>
<td>Posttest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX A</td>
<td>Studying for Success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX B</td>
<td>Additional Resources</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The words we use to communicate every day are important in every aspect of our lives. From relaxing, to working, to studying, to taking tests, we use words to share with others how we feel, what we think, and why we think that way. Without words, it is difficult to express our ideas to the rest of the world. The more words we know—the larger our vocabulary—the more clearly we can communicate with others. Our vocabularies reveal our knowledge to the world; therefore, a person with a large vocabulary has the advantage of self-expression.

This book will help you learn the words you need to know to successfully express yourself in school, work, and your personal life. The words in this book have been carefully chosen to help you learn what you need to know to pass any test—from standardized tests, to civil service tests, to college entrance exams, and to professional job interviews—and continue to build your vocabulary, even after you have finished using this book.

In each of the following chapters, you will complete practice exercises that have been created specifically to help you understand words inside out. You will learn pronunciation, spelling, context, definitions, word parts, denotation and connotation, synonyms, and antonyms. The word lists are grouped into categories, so you will be able to associate them with like words and remember them more easily. There is also a crossword puzzle at the beginning of chapters 14–18 to introduce you to the new words before you begin to work on the practice exercises. Then, you can take the Posttest at the end of the book and gauge how much you’ve really learned about words and how you have improved your vocabulary.
How to Use This Book

Build Your Vocabulary
People have three vocabularies in each language that they speak:

- A speaking vocabulary—words and expressions we use every day to communicate
- A listening vocabulary—words and expressions we have heard but may have never used
- A reading vocabulary—words and expressions we have encountered in print but have neither heard nor used

One of the best ways to increase your vocabulary is to make a conscious effort to move words from your listening or reading vocabularies to your speaking vocabulary—the words you not only understand, but also use. This book is especially helpful because the exercises you complete help you use your new vocabulary words so you know them cold. Suddenly, you’ll find yourself speaking and writing with these new words, and you will also find that reading will become much easier as you begin to recognize more and more words.

Test makers try to assess how well you have absorbed your language and how well you can use and identify the words you know to express yourself and understand others. Each lesson in this book will help you show test makers and prospective employers that you know how to communicate clearly and effectively, and that you understand what others are communicating to you. Once you have learned the vocabulary words and completed the exercises in this book, you’ll have what you need to ace any exam or job interview.

Write It Down
If this book is yours, write in it as much as you like. Write your answers in the blanks indicated and write notes to yourself in the margins. It is meant for you to consume. Pull out important details from the surrounding text to make them more visible and accessible to you. Underline or highlight information that seems important to you. Make notes in the margins that will help you follow what’s important as you practice and learn your new words.

Make Flash Cards
If you are having trouble remembering words, even after the drills and practice exercises in the book, buy some index cards and make flash cards for yourself. Write a vocabulary word on one side of the card, and then write its definition, synonyms, antonyms, or other essential information on the other side of the card. You can carry the cards with you to review when you have a free moment.

Ask for Help
Enlist a friend or relative to help drill you on any word with which you are having trouble. You’ll be surprised at how much more you will remember if you share what you know with someone else, and if they help you come up with clues to help jog your memory.

Keep a List
In addition to the words you learn in this book, make a list of flash cards of new, useful words that you encounter at work, at school, on TV, in your reading, or even at home. They will more than double the benefit you will get from using this book.

How the Book Is Set Up
Each chapter of this book that contains a word list starts with a crossword puzzle to help you get acquainted with your new words. Do your best to fill it in; if there are some words you don’t recognize, you can flip to the next page, where you will find the full definition, pronunciation and part of speech of each word in the word list. Take a good look at how each word is pronounced, especially the accented syllables. You should pronounce each word aloud several times. The sentence below each definition illustrates the word’s meaning. You should fill in the blank inside each sen-
tence with the correct word from the list. It is a good idea to say the entire sentence aloud.

Second, you will encounter several words from the Vocabulary List in context. If you do not remember the meaning of the words, you should circle any clues in the text that might help you figure out the meaning of these unfamiliar words.

Then, you will read and fill in the blank to complete the sentence by selecting the best choice from the Vocabulary List on which you are working. Read each sentence slowly and carefully. There are usually clues within each sentence that tell you which word from the list is the best choice.

Next, you will encounter exercises that revolve around synonyms and antonyms. You will read a group of words and decide which one is not a synonym. Then, you will read a group of words and select the word from the Vocabulary List that is most nearly opposite in meaning from the entire group of words.

You will also complete matching, true/false, and choosing the right word exercises that will help you reinforce the meanings of each new word you have learned. Then, at the end of the book, you will take a 75-question posttest so that you can see how much you’ve learned as you’ve worked through this book.

The pretest that follows this Introduction will help you see how good you are at identifying unfamiliar words. Then, Chapters 3 and 4 will teach you about the basics of vocabulary. In Chapter 3, you’ll learn important vocabulary terms and about language origins, and then in Chapter 4, you’ll learn important spelling rules to help you become a better speller, even on those tricky or foreign words. Then, you’ll get to the word lists. The 15 Vocabulary List chapters consist of helpful exercises to drill you on new words, so that by the end of each lesson, you’ll know them inside out. Finally, completing the posttest will show you how far you’ve come, and how well you know your new words.

You can also refer to Appendices A and B to learn important studying strategies and find out about other valuable resources.

Self-Analysis
Find out how you feel about your own vocabulary with the following self-assessment. Put a check next to the sentences that best describe your own vocabulary habits.

_____ 1. I feel confident that I express myself clearly in speaking.
_____ 2. I sometimes feel uncomfortable when I know what I want to say but just can’t think of the right word.
_____ 3. I notice unfamiliar words in print and wonder about their meanings.
_____ 4. Sometimes I come across unfamiliar words in print and feel that I should know them.
_____ 5. I remember words that I had on vocabulary quizzes and tests at school.
_____ 6. If I write down new words, I can learn them.
_____ 7. If I come across an unfamiliar word in print, I will look it up in the dictionary.
_____ 8. If I come across an unfamiliar word in print, I will ask someone to tell me the meaning.
_____ 9. If I hear an unfamiliar word in conversation or on TV, I will ask someone to tell me its meaning.
_____ 10. If I hear or see an unfamiliar word, I am usually embarrassed to ask for or to look up its meaning.

Your answers to these questions should give you a good sense of how you feel about and use your vocabulary.
VOCABULARY & SPELLING SUCCESS
Before you start your study of vocabulary, you may want to get an idea of how much you already know and how much you need to learn. If that's the case, take the pretest in this chapter. The pretest consists of 50 questions introducing you to many of the words you will learn as you complete the exercises in this book. Even if you get all the questions on this pretest right, it's almost guaranteed that you will find a few words in this book that you didn't know before. On the other hand, if you hardly know any of the words on the pretest, don't despair. Out of the many words in this book, you're sure to find a few that you are already familiar with, and that will make the going easier.

So, use this pretest just to get a general idea of how much of this book you already know. If you get a high score on this pretest, you may be able to spend less time with this book than you originally planned. If you get a lower score, you'll be amazed at how much your vocabulary will improve by completing the exercises in each chapter.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>a</th>
<th>b</th>
<th>c</th>
<th>d</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pretest

Choose the best word to fill in the blank. Mark your answers on the answer sheet on page 3 by darkening the corresponding oval.

1. When I received my term paper back, my teacher’s comments on it were so ______ that I had to ask him to explain each one.
   a. disinterested
   b. copious
   c. audible
   d. illegible

2. The ______ data supports the belief that there has been an increase in population.
   a. nominal
   b. demographic
   c. pragmatic
   d. puerile

3. The veterinarian came out and told the cat’s owner that the animal’s ______ for recovery is good.
   a. prognosis
   b. etymology
   c. pragmatism
   d. euphemism

4. Because I didn’t want anyone else to be able to uncover the meaning of my note, I wrote a ______ message only he could understand.
   a. chronic
   b. agoraphobic
   c. cryptic
   d. incisive

5. Scientists research gene _____ in fruit flies to see how genes change from one generation to the next.
   a. remittance
   b. mutation
   c. mediocre
   d. cliché

6. The hotel tried to _____ their mistake by giving us a suite at a reduced price.
   a. debut
   b. rectify
   c. recapitulate
   d. exempt

7. The theatre’s acoustics were awful; the actors’ voices were barely ______.
   a. equity
   b. audible
   c. bandwidth
   d. abrogate

8. Our club values the ______ of its members; we know we can always count on one another.
   a. perjury
   b. epigram
   c. fidelity
   d. firewall

9. Now that it has gotten so late, it is ______ that they are not going to show up.
   a. moot
   b. prose
   c. churlish
   d. evident

10. The one year the company did not break even was just a/an ______.
    a. acme
    b. facetious
    c. syllogism
    d. anomaly
Choose the word that is closest in meaning to the **bold** word.

11. purge
   a. cite
   b. purify
   c. perspective
   d. decimate

12. parity
   a. equality
   b. mimicry
   c. antipathy
   d. sympathy

13. furtive
   a. open
   b. demote
   c. secret
   d. utopia

14. vivacious
   a. lively
   b. relevant
   c. ornate
   d. flippant

15. audacious
   a. badinage
   b. guttural
   c. bold
   d. stolid

16. acme
   a. pinnacle
   b. server
   c. retrospect
   d. consortium

17. staid
   a. pallor
   b. sham
   c. sober
   d. elite

18. addle
   a. stolid
   b. empiric
   c. ruminate
   d. muddle

19. erudite
   a. genteel
   b. scholarly
   c. garrulous
   d. bequest

20. tenet
   a. belief
   b. antecedent
   c. teleology
   d. demote

Choose the word that is most nearly the opposite of the **bold** word.

21. feisty
   a. staid
   b. relevant
   c. tangential
   d. hot

22. bigotry
   a. prognosis
   b. open-mindedness
   c. badinage
   d. parity
23. agonize
   a. blasé
   b. rectify
   c. enjoy
   d. trivial

24. élan
   a. fidelity
   b. ingénue
   c. error
   d. frumpy

25. bane
   a. solace
   b. crux
   c. pun
   d. downfall

26. banal
   a. puerile
   b. trite
   c. fresh
   d. obtuse

27. dross
   a. improvise
   b. waste
   c. oblique
   d. essential

28. extricate
   a. remove
   b. entangle
   c. malaise
   d. gauche

29. avant-garde
   a. cliché
   b. vendetta
   c. original
   d. trivial

30. purloin
   a. larceny
   b. wallow
   c. return
   d. plausible

Choose the word that is spelled correctly.

31. a. percieve
   b. achieve
   c. reciept
   d. hygeine

32. a. knarled
   b. blight
   c. alite
   d. fraut

33. a. indeight
   b. indite
   c. indight
   d. indict

34. a. kerchiefs
   b. kerchievs
   c. kerchieves
   d. kercheifs

35. a. curiculums
   b. curriculmns
   c. curriculas
   d. curricula

36. Spike was the most ____ dog you could ever wish for.
   a. peacable
   b. paeceable
   c. paecable
   d. peaceable
37. Spending your summer in Spain will be a great _____ for you to improve your Spanish.
   a. opportunity
   b. opportunity
   c. opportunity
   d. opportunity

38. Al and Jane hired attorneys, and together, the _____ added up to over $10,000.
   a. lawyer’s bills
   b. lawyers’ bills’
   c. lawyers’ bills
   d. lawyer bills

39. The county commissioners said _____ going to discuss the taxation issue at the meeting next week.
   a. they’re
   b. there
   c. their
   d. thei’r

40. Young people think that they are _____, so they tend to take more risks.
   a. invincible
   b. invincable
   c. invensible
   d. invinseble

41. consummate a. elegant
42. copious b. inclined
43. euphemism c. rise and fall
44. mediocre d. inelegant
45. urbane e. complete
46. gauche f. embodiment
47. fluctuate g. abundant
48. epitome h. average
49. mete i. allocate
50. prone j. inoffensive expression
### Answers

There are three ways we learn vocabulary:

1. From the sound of words
2. From the structure of words
3. From the context of words—how words are used in communication

Therefore, when you encounter unfamiliar words, you should ask yourself:

- Does this word sound like anything I’ve ever heard?
- Does any part of the word look familiar?
- How is this word used in the sentence I just read or heard?
Each lesson of this book presents a word list so you can try this process. As you read each word list, you’ll find that you already recognize some of the words—maybe from your reading and listening vocabularies—and the ones you don’t know you will learn as you proceed through the lesson.

Word Parts—Prefixes, Suffixes, and Roots

You use prefixes, suffixes, and word roots every day, whether you realize it or not. These parts of words make up almost all of the words we use in the English language and you will find that the meanings of many unfamiliar words become much more clear when you understand the meanings of the most common of these word parts.

Prefixes

A prefix is the word part placed at the beginning of a word. It is usually only one syllable, but sometimes it is more. Its job is to change or add to the meaning of a word. For example, you probably use the word review on a regular basis. What does it mean? Let’s break it down. First, we can break it down into syllables: re-view. View means to look at, and the prefix, re- adds to the meaning of the word. Re- means back or again, so by putting together what you already know, you can figure out that the word review means to look back at, or to look at again. Other common prefixes include, in-, anti-, pre-, post-, un-, non-, con-, and dis-. You will learn more about prefixes and their meanings in Chapter 4.

Suffixes

A suffix is a word part placed at the end of a word that signals how a word is being used in a sentence and identifies its part of speech. When you attach different suffixes onto the base of a word, they change the word’s part of speech. For example, the word sterilize is a verb meaning to sanitize. As an adjective, it takes the suffix, -ile and becomes sterile. As a noun, it takes the suffix -tion and becomes sterilization. The suffix changes the word’s job in a sentence, and it also helps give you a clue as to the meaning of an unfamiliar word. You will learn more about suffixes and their meanings and jobs in Chapter 5.

Roots

The pieces of words that carry direct meaning are called roots. Many English words stem from ancient Greek and Latin words, and because so many English words have their source in certain recurring root words, knowing some of the most commonly used roots gives you access to many words at once. Thus, when you combine your knowledge of prefixes and suffixes with your knowledge of roots, you can figure out the meaning of many unfamiliar words. For example, the word root cogn- means to know. Words that include this root are recognize, meaning to identify as known, incognito, meaning unknown, and cognition, meaning knowledge. You can see how knowing the base of these three words, in addition to having knowledge of prefixes and suffixes, can really help you work out the meanings of unfamiliar words. You’ll learn more about roots in Chapters 6 and 7.

Syllables

When you were first learning to read, you learned about syllables, the parts of words that carry separate sounds. Breaking words into syllables is one of the best strategies for seeing if a word is in your listening or reading vocabularies. It also helps you break larger words into smaller, more manageable, and often more recognizable parts. This will be especially helpful in Chapters 4, 5, 6, and 7, when you are working with Vocabulary Lists that teach you about prefixes, suffixes, and roots. By breaking words down into syllables, you will be able to identify the meanings of unfamiliar words that contain these word parts.
Rules for Dividing Words into Syllables

Here are a couple of quick rules for dividing words by syllables:

1. Divide between double consonants: ham-mock.
2. Divide after prefixes and before suffixes: in-vest-ment.

If you already have some feel for how the word sounds, you can divide it according to the sound of the vowels:

3. Divide after the vowel if it has the long sound: so-lar.
4. Divide after the consonant if the vowel sound is short: pris-on.

Synonyms and Antonyms

Questions on standardized tests and civil service exams often ask you to find the synonym or antonym of a word. Therefore, as you learn the words in this book, you should try to think of or look up synonyms and antonyms of the words in the Vocabulary Lists. You will also be asked to complete exercises in this book to help you learn even more synonyms and antonyms.

Synonyms

A word is a synonym of another word if it has the same, or nearly the same, meaning as the word to which it is being compared. For example, the words conceal and hide are synonyms. They both mean the same thing: to keep out of sight.

Antonyms

An antonym is a word that means the opposite of the word to which it is being compared. A couple of obvious examples of antonym pairs are happy and sad, good and bad, and love and hate.

Denotation and Connotation

The denotation of a word is its dictionary definition, while the connotation of a word has to do with the tone of the word—the emotions it evokes in the reader. For example if you were to look up the word joke in the dictionary, you might get a definition similar to that of synonyms like quip, or prank—something like “something said or done to provoke laughter”—but all three of these words have different connotations. In other words, they bring to mind different feelings—one positive, one negative, and one neutral. As you are learning the words in this book, try to think of other similar words that might be synonyms, but might also have slightly different connotations, or tones.

Homonyms

Homonyms are words that sound the same, but aren’t. They have the same pronunciation, but they are neither spelled the same way, nor do they have the same meaning. For example, which and witch are homonyms, and so are their, there, and they’re. When you are listening to the words, or reading them in context, it is easy to work out their meaning; however, it is very important to know which definition corresponds to the correct spelling of the homonym. If you misspell a homonym, people will have a difficult time understanding what you are trying to communicate to them. You will learn more about homonyms in the next chapter.

Context Clues

Context is the surrounding text in which a word is used. Most people automatically use context to help them determine the meaning of an unknown word. When you encounter a word in its surroundings, it is much easier to figure out its meaning, or at least its connotation. The best way to take meaning from context
is to search the surrounding text for key words in sentences or paragraphs that convey the meaning of the unfamiliar word.

Often, restatement and contrast clues will lead you right to the meaning of unfamiliar words. For example, read the following sentence and see if you can figure out the meaning of the italicized word from closely examining the surrounding text.

Although when Hannah joined the company she was promised *perquisites* every six months, she has been working at the company for two years and has never received any sort of bonus.

The words *although* and *bonus* should give you a clue as to the meaning of *perquisite*. You know that Hannah has never received a bonus in two years of work for the same company, and you know that she was promised something, so the word *although* gives you the final clue because it signals a contrast. You can conclude that a *perquisite* is a synonym for *bonus*.

She was *exempt* from duty that day. She was excused because she had been injured.

In this sentence, the meaning of *exempt* is restated for you. *Exempt* is a synonym for *excused*.

You will get plenty of practice identifying the meanings of unfamiliar words in context throughout the rest of this book.

Good communication skills—including vocabulary and spelling—are essential. A good vocabulary increases your ability to understand reading material and to express yourself in speaking and in writing. Without a broad vocabulary, your ability to learn is limited. The good news is that vocabulary skills can be developed with practice, which is exactly what this book gives you.
In the English language, if you simply wrote words the way they sound, you’d come up with some very peculiar spellings. If you tried to sound out every word and pronounce it exactly the way it’s written, you’d come up with some pretty odd pronunciations too.

Here are some general multisensory tips for studying spelling:

- **Use your eyes.**
  - ✓ Look at words carefully. With a marker or pen, highlight the part of the word that is hard to remember.
  - ✓ Visualize the word with your eyes closed.

- **Use your ears.**
  - ✓ Listen for the sound of words you hear in conversation or on the radio or television.
  - ✓ Listen to the sound of the spelling of words. Ask someone to dictate the words and their spelling, and listen as the word is spelled out.

- **Use your hands.**
  - ✓ Write the word several times, spelling it in your head as you write.
There are two main stumbling blocks to spelling by sight and sound. One we have already identified—the fact that English is both phonetically inconsistent and visually confusing. Here are four strategies that can guide your way through a difficult system and give you some ways to make good spelling a part of your life.

1. **Learn the rules, but expect some exceptions.**
   The lessons that follow point out both spelling rules and their exceptions.

2. **Use mnemonics (memory tricks) to help you remember how to spell unfamiliar or confusing words.**
   The most common type of mnemonic is the *acronym*. An acronym is a word created from the first letters in a series of words. Another type of mnemonic is a silly sentence or phrase, known as an *acrostic*, which is made out of words that each begin with the letter or letters that start each item in a series that you want to remember.

3. **Write it down.** This book provides you with helpful exercises that require you to write your vocabulary words in a blank space. This act will help your hand and eye remember how to spell the word. Make sure to spell the word correctly as you go along so you don’t have to relearn the word’s spelling later on. After you are done with this book, you can teach yourself to spell new words in the same way. The simple act of writing words down several times will help you cement their spellings in your mind.

4. **Referring to a pronunciation chart in any dictionary will help guide you through pronouncing the words in our book and also familiarize you with pronouncing other new words you encounter in everyday life.** You can also access pronunciation charts online. The following is a list of a few online resources:

There are many other online dictionaries such as www.dictionary.com; or just type “online dictionary” into any search engine, and get ready to pronounce.

---

### Vowels

**When to Use *ie* and *ei***

When to Use *ie* and *ei*:

- You probably learned this saying years ago in school:
  - *i* before *e* except after *c* and when sounding like “ay” as in neighbor and weigh.

This saying should help you remember the basic principle of when to use *ie* and *ei* when spelling words. The following sections outline the specifics of when to spell a word with *ie* and when to spell a word with *ei* and their exceptions.

**The *ie* Rule**

Here are some examples of words that use *ie* to make the long *e* sound:

- achieve
- belief
- cashier
- chief
- fierce

**Exceptions**

Sometimes, the *ie* combination has other sounds:

- It can sound like short *e*, as in *friend*
- It can sound like long *i*, as in *piety, fiery, quiet, notoriety, society, science*
The only time the *ie* combination comes after *c* is when it sounds like *sh*, as in *ancient, deficient, conscience*.

**The *ei* Rule**

Here are some examples of words in which *ei* makes the long *a* sound:

- deign, reign
- eight, sleigh
- feign, surveillance
- freight, vein
- heinous, weight

**Exceptions**

Sometimes, you will simply have to memorize words that use the *ei* combination because they don’t follow the rule.

- In some words, *ei* is used even though it sounds like *ee*: either, seize, weird, sheik, seizure, leisure
- Sometimes, *ei* sounds like long *i*: height, sleight, stein, seismology
- Sometimes, *ei* sounds like short *e*: heifer, their, foreign, forfeit
- As you learned in the saying on the previous page, after *c* you use *ei*, even if it sounds like *ee*: ceiling, deceit, conceited, receive, receipt

**Spelling Practice 1**

Circle the word in the parentheses that is spelled correctly. Check your answers at the end of the lesson.

1. My (*niece, neice*) was born on Thanksgiving Day.

2. My brother is the kind of person who likes to (*siez, seize*) every opportunity, no matter how big or small.

3. The vet said that my dog’s (*weight, wieght*) was too much with respect to its (*height, hieght*).

4. I was (*releived, relieved*) when I realized I hadn’t missed my flight.

5. The (*reign, riegn*) of a top-ranked tennis player is short-lived.

6. When I was in college, I worked as a (*casheir, cashier*) at the local grocery store.

7. There are (*surveillance, surviellance*) cameras in the lobby of my building.

8. I decided to go with a wallpaper (*frieze, freize*) along the upper wall in the family room.

9. I have always wanted to be a (*chief, cheif*) editor.

10. He is a (*feind, fiend*) with no conscience.

**More Vowel Combinations**

When two vowels are together, the first one is usually long, or says its own name, and the second one is silent. For example, in the word *reach*, you hear long *e*, but not the short *a*. Similarly, if you know how to pronounce the word *caffeine*, you stand a chance at spelling it correctly because you hear that the *e* sound comes first. If you know what sound you hear, that sound is likely to be the first of two vowels working together.

Here are some examples of words using *ai, ui*, and *ea* combinations in which the vowel you hear is the one that comes first.
**Words with ai**  
abstain  cheap  juice  
acquaint  conceal  nuisance  
chaise  gear  ruin  
paisley  heal  suit  
prevail  lead  
refrain  reveal  
traipse  steal  

**The Exceptions**  
There are several exceptions to this rule, which you will simply have to recognize by sight rather than by sound.

**Exceptions**  
porcelain  beauty  healthy  hearse  hearty

The following are some tips to help you remember these exceptions. Remember the word *heart* is in *hearty*. Think of it like this: “A hearty person is good-hearted.” Some people put ice in juice. You can think: “Juice is cooler if you add ice.” And, the word *heal* appears in *healthy*. Think of it like this: “The doctor will heal you and help you stay healthy.”

**Words with ai or ia**

When the vowel pair has one sound and says “uh” (e.g. *captain*), it uses *ai*. When the vowel pair has separate sounds (e.g. *genial*), it uses *ia*. However, there is an exception: When words combine *t* or *c* with *ia*, they make a “shuh” sound, for example, *martial, beneficial, glacial*. The following are some examples of words that follow the *ai* and *ia* rules:

**Words with ai**  
Britain  alleviate  
captain  brilliant  
certain  civilian  
chieftain  familiar

**Words with ia**  
curtain  guardian  
fountain  median  
villain  menial

---

**Consonants**

**Silent Consonants**

Many English words include silent consonants, ones that are written but not pronounced. Unfortunately, there is no rule governing silent consonants; you simply have to learn the words by sight. The following list includes some common examples, with the silent consonants highlighted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Consonants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>answer</td>
<td>gnaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autumn</td>
<td>indict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blight</td>
<td>kneel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calm</td>
<td>knight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debt</td>
<td>knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ghost</td>
<td>psalm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Memory Tricks**

Use sound cues or sight cues, depending on which works better for you—or use both to reinforce your learning.

- Pronounce the silent consonants in your mind as you write them. Say *subtle, often*, and so on.
- Write the words on index cards and highlight the missing consonant sounds with a marker.

**Spelling Practice 2**

Fill in the missing (silent) letters in the following words.

11. _night
12. ans__er
13. de__t
14. __narled
Doubling Consonants
Most of the time, a final consonant is doubled when you add an ending. For example, drop becomes dropping, mop becomes mopping, stab becomes stabbing. But what about look/looking, rest/resting, counsel/counseled?

The Rules
There are two sets of rules: one for when you’re adding an ending that begins with a vowel (such as -ed, -ing, -ance, -ence, -ant) and another set for when the ending begins with a consonant (such as -ness or -ly).

1. When the ending begins with a vowel:
   - Double the last consonant in a one-syllable word that ends with one vowel and one consonant. For example, flip becomes flipper or flipping, quit becomes quitter or quitting, and clap becomes clapper or clapping.
   - Double the final consonant when the last syllable is accented and there is only one consonant in the accented syllable. For example, acquit becomes acquitting, refer becomes referring, and commit becomes committing.

   You can remember a shorter version of the rules about doubling before an ending that begins with a vowel: one syllable or accented last syllable doubles the single consonant.

2. When the ending begins with a consonant:
   - Keep a final n when you add -ness. You end up with a double n: keenness, leanness.
   - Keep a final l when you add -ly. You end up with a double l: formally, regally, legally.

   In other cases, then, you don’t double the consonant.

The Exceptions
There are exceptions to the rules, but not many. Here are a few of them:

- bus becomes buses
- chagrin becomes chagrined
- draw becomes drawing

Spelling Practice 3
This exercise focuses on double consonants. Choose an appropriate ending for each word: -ed, -ing, -ness, or -ly. Rewrite the word on the line that follows it, doubling the consonant if necessary.

21. final __________________________
22. submit __________________________
23. think __________________________
24. roam __________________________
25. control __________________________
26. plain __________________________
27. rebel (v) _________________________

28. throb __________________________
29. legal __________________________
30. rain __________________________
The Special Challenges of C and G

The letters c and g can sound either soft or hard. When c is soft, it sounds like s; when it’s hard, it sounds like k. When g is soft, it sounds like j; when it’s hard, it sounds like g as in guess. But the difference isn’t as confusing as it seems at first. The letters c and g are soft when followed by e, i, or y. Otherwise, they are hard. Thus, c sounds like s when it is followed by e, i, or y, as in central, circle, cycle. It sounds like k when followed by other vowels: case, cousin, current. The same rule also applies to the letter g: g sounds like j when followed by e, i, or y, as in genius, giant, gym. When followed by other vowels, g is hard: gamble, go, gun.

The following are examples of words in which e, i or y makes a soft c or g.

- centimeter
- general
- centrifuge
- generous
- circulate
- genteel
- circus
- germ
- cyclical
- giraffe
- cymbal
- gyrante

One more thing to remember is that a k is added to a final c before an ending that begins with e, i, or y. If you didn’t add the k, the c would become soft and sound like s. So in order to add -ing to panic, for example, you have to put a k first: panicking.

The following words are examples of words that have had a k added to c before an ending beginning with e, i, or y.

- mimicking
- picnicked
- panicky
- trafficking

There are virtually no exceptions to the rules about using c and g. Listen to the words as you spell them and let the rule guide your choice: e, s, or k; g or j.

Spelling Practice 4

Using the previous list, add the missing letters to the following words:

31. The crashing of the c__mbal made them all pay attention.
32. He was a g__nerous man who gave willingly of what he had.
33. He was arrested for traffic__ing in drugs.
34. The g__neral ordered the troops into battle.
35. The fan helped to c__rculate the air.

Homonyms

Homonyms are words that sound the same, but are spelled differently. Many of these words have just one change in the vowel or vowel combination. There’s no rule about these words, so you’ll simply have to memorize them. Here are some examples of word pairs that can be troublesome. Sometimes, it helps to learn each word in terms of the job it will do in a sentence. Often, the two words in a homophone pair are a different part of speech. Take a look at the following examples:

- affect/effect
- alter/alter
- bare/bear
- bloc/block
- cite/site
- cord/chord
- coarse/course
- descent/dissent
- dual/duel
- heal/heel
- led/lead
- minor/miner
- passed/past
- peal/peel
- piece/peace
- shear/shear
- stationery/stationary
- week/week
- which/witch
- write/right
Since the meanings of these homonyms are different, context is probably the best way to differentiate between these words.

**Examples in Context**
- In the Middle Ages, many people used to shear (verb) sheep for a living.
  Since my curtains are *sheer* (adjective), I get a lot of light in the morning.
- We had to *alter* (verb) our plans because of the bad weather.
  The couple stood at the *altar* (noun) while they said their vows.
- I had to use *coarse* (adjective) sandpaper to strip the paint off of the wooden desk.
  When I was in college, drama was my favorite *course* (noun).

Try the following exercise to practice identifying the correct homonym in context.

**Spelling Practice 5**
Circle the word that fits correctly into the sentence. Check your answers at the end of the lesson.

42. You have the *(right, write)* to request a promotion.
43. I like my new printer because it doesn’t require a *(chord, cord)*.
44. In the *(passed, past)*, I used to run five miles a day.
45. When I fly, I always find the *(descent, dissent)* to be the most nerve-wracking part of the trip.

**Endings**

**When to Drop a Final e**
It’s hard to remember when to drop letters and when to keep them. This lesson will nail down some simple rules to help you with those decisions.

**Rule 1**
Drop the final *e* when you add an ending that begins with a vowel

- With *-ing*
  change + *-ing* = changing
- With *-able*
  argue + *-able* = arguable
- With *-ous*
  virtue + *-ous* = virtuous
- With *-ity*
  opportune + *-ity* = opportunity

**The Exceptions**
- Keep the final *e* after soft *c* or soft *g* in order to keep the soft sound.
  peace + *-able* = peaceable
  courage + *-ous* = courageous
- Keep the final *e* in other cases when you need to protect pronunciation.
  shoe + *-ing* = shoeing (not shoing)
  guarantee + *-ing* = guaranteeing (not guaranteeing)
Rule 2
Keep the final e before endings that begin with consonants. Here are some examples of words that use this rule:

- With -ment
  advertise + -ment = advertisement
- With -ness
  appropriate + -ness = appropriateness
- With -less
  care + -less = careless
- With -ful
  grace + -ful = graceful

The Exception
There’s one important exception to the rule about keeping the final e when you add an ending that begins with a consonant:

- Drop the final e when it occurs after the letters u or w.
  argue + -ment = argument
  awe + -ful = awful
  true + -ly = truly

Spelling Practice 6
Write the following combinations in the blanks provided, keeping or omitting the final e as necessary.

46. It was a (surprise + -ing) __________________ ending.

47. The real estate agent said that the property would be very (desire + -able) __________________ on the market.

48. The astronauts were remarkably (courage + -ous) __________________ men and women.

49. The storm brought a (scarce + -ity) __________________ of fresh food and electricity.

50. The Quakers are a (peace + -able) __________________ people.

51. He read a great (advertise + -ment) __________________ in the paper today.

52. He had to learn not to be so (care + -less) __________________ with his wallet.

53. He was known for his (polite + -ness) __________________ and good manners.

54. They had an (argue + -ment) __________________ on the phone.

55. He left the room in a (disgrace + -ful) __________________ condition.

When to Keep a Final Y or Change It to I

When you add a suffix to a word ending in y, keep the y if it follows a vowel. This time it doesn’t matter whether the suffix begins with a vowel or a consonant. Always keep the y if it comes immediately after a vowel. The following are some examples.

- With -s
  attorney + -s = attorneys
- With -ed
  play + -ed = played
- With -ing
  relay + -ing = relaying
- With -ance
  annoy + -ance = annoyance
- With -able
  enjoy + -able = enjoyable
The Exceptions
Some words break this rule and change the y to i.

- day becomes daily
- pay becomes paid
- say becomes said

When you add a suffix to a word ending in y, change the y to i if it follows a consonant. Again, it doesn’t matter whether the suffix begins with a vowel or a consonant. Here are some examples:

- With ful
  beauty + -ful = beautiful
- With -ness
  lonely + -ness = loneliness
- With -ly
  angry + -ly = angrily
- With -es
  salary + -es = salaries

The Exception
There’s one group of exceptions to the above rule:

- When you add -ing, keep the final y.
  study + -ing = studying

Spelling Practice 7
Rewrite the words with their suffixes in the blanks.

56. We hired two (attorney + -s)
   ______________________ to handle the case.

57. She insisted on (relay + -ing)
   ______________________ the message to her father.

58. I found the movie very (enjoy + -able)
   ______________________.

59. The children were (play + -ing)
   ______________________ outdoors.

60. The mosquitoes were a serious (annoy + -ance)
   ______________________.

61. He always (hurry + -es)
   ______________________ to get to school early.

62. The lumberjack ate (hearty + -ly)
   ______________________ through a stack of pancakes.

63. She spent all her spare time (study + -ing)
   ______________________ for the exam.

64. He (angry + -ly)
   ______________________ slammed the door.

65. There was a (plenty + -ful)
   ______________________ supply of fish in the lake.

Plurals
One of the difficulties of spelling in English is the making of plurals. Unfortunately, you can’t always simply add the letter -s to the end of the word to signal more than one.

When to Use -s or -es to Form Plurals
There are two simple rules that govern most plurals.

Most nouns add -s to make plurals.
If a noun ends in a sibilant sound (s, ss, z, ch, x, sh), add -es.

The following are some examples of plurals:

- cars
- faxes
- dresses
- computers
- indexes
- churches
- books
- lunches
- guesses
- skills
- dishes
- buzzes
The Exception

Remember from the last lesson that when a word ends in a y preceded by a consonant, the y changes to i when you add -es.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rally</td>
<td>rallies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plurals for Words That End in O

There's just one quick rule that governs a few words ending in o.

If a final o follows another vowel, it takes -s.

Here are some examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>patios</td>
<td>radios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>studios</td>
<td>videos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Exceptions

When the final o follows a consonant rather than a vowel, there's no rule to guide you in choosing -s or -es. You just have to learn the individual words.

The following words form a plural with -s alone:

- albinos
- pianos
- altos
- silos
- banjos
- sopranos
- logos
- broncos

The following words take -es

- heroes
- tomatoes
- potatoes
- vetoes

When in doubt about whether to add -s or -es, look it up in the dictionary.

Spelling Practice 8

Add -s or -es to the words in the sentences.

66. He sent me two fax ___ last night.
67. There were flash ___ of lightning in the dark sky.
68. He struck several match ___ before one finally caught fire.
69. You have two guess ___ at the correct answer.
70. Spelling is one of the most helpful skill ___ you can develop.
71. He peeled so many potato ___ in the army that he wouldn't eat french fries for a year.
72. The two soprano ___ gave a wonderful performance.
73. He wished there were more hero ___ in the world today.
74. The piano ___ were out of tune.
75. The farmers harvest their tomato ___ in the summer months.

Plurals for Words That End in f

Some words that end in f or fe just take -s to form the plural. Others change the f to v and add -es or -s. Unfortunately, there are no rules that can apply to this category of plurals; you simply have to memorize them.

The following are some of the words that keep the final f and add -s:

- beliefs
- chiefs
- cuffs
- proofs

Here are some of the words that change the final f to v and take -es:

- gulfs
- kerchiefs

Plurals That Don’t Use -s or -es
There are many words that don’t use -s or -es to form plurals. These are usually words that still observe the rules of the languages from which they were adopted. Most of these plurals are part of your reading, speaking, and listening vocabularies. You can see that there are patterns that will help you. For instance, in Latin words, -um becomes -a, -us becomes -i, and, in Greek words, -sis becomes -ses. A good way to remember these plurals is by saying the words aloud, because for the most part, they do change form and you may remember them more easily if you listen to the sound of the spelling.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>children</td>
<td>fungus</td>
<td>fungi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deer</td>
<td>deer</td>
<td>medium</td>
<td>media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goose</td>
<td>geese</td>
<td>stratum</td>
<td>strata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man</td>
<td>men</td>
<td>analysis</td>
<td>analyses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>mice</td>
<td>axis</td>
<td>axes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ox</td>
<td>oxen</td>
<td>basis</td>
<td>bases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woman</td>
<td>women</td>
<td>oasis</td>
<td>oases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alumnus</td>
<td>alumni</td>
<td>parenthesis</td>
<td>parenthenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curriculum</td>
<td>curricula</td>
<td>thesis</td>
<td>theses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datum</td>
<td>data</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This rule applies even when the root word begins with the same letter as the prefix. Generally, you use both consonants, but let your eye be your guide. If it looks odd, it’s probably not spelled correctly. The following are some examples:

dissatisfied  irreverent

disservice  misspelled

illegible  misstep

irrational  unnatural

Spelling Practice 9
Circle the correctly spelled word in each of the following sentences.

76. The argument seemed (illogical/illogical) to me.

77. He was busy (collating/colating) all the pages.

78. She was (irreverent/ireverent) in church today.

79. The (comentator/commentator) on TV summarized the news of the day.

80. They (colaborated/collaborated) on the project for school.

Hyphens
When you put words and word parts together, it’s difficult to know when to leave the words separate, when to hyphenate, and when to put the words or word parts together into one new word. Do you write co-dependent or codependent? Do I have a son in law or a son-in-law? There are several rules for using hyphens to join words. Often, these words are joined so they can perform a new function in the sentence.
Combine words with a hyphen to form an adjective when the adjective appears before a noun.
- a well-heeled man
- a first-rate hotel
- a well-known actor

When the combination of words that makes an adjective appears after the noun, the combination is not hyphenated.
- It's a job ill suited to his talents.
- She is well regarded in the community.
- The hotel is first rate.

Combine words with a hyphen when the words are used together as one part of speech. This includes family relationships.
- editor-in-chief
- jack-of-all-trades
- maid-of-all-work
- mother-in-law
- runner-up
- sister-in-law

Use a hyphen before elect and after vice, ex, or self.
- ex-President
- ex-teacher
- self-styled
- Senator-elect
- Vice-Admiral

Use a hyphen when joining a prefix to a capitalized word.
- mid-Atlantic
- pan-European
- post-Civil War
- trans-Siberian
- un-American

Use a hyphen to make compound numbers or fractions.
- thirty-nine years
- one and two-thirds cups of broth
- one-half of the country
- three-fourths of the electorate

Also, use a hyphen when you combine numbers with nouns.
- a class of six-year-olds
- a two-year term
- a twenty-five-cent fare

Use a hyphen to form ethnic designations.
- an African-American woman
- the Sino-Russian War
- the Austro-Hungarian Railroad

Except for the cases you just reviewed, prefixes are also joined directly to root words. The best rule of thumb is this: If the phrase acts like an adjective, it probably needs a hyphen. If you want to put two words together and they don’t seem to fit into any of these rules, the best strategy is to consult a dictionary.

Apostrophes and Abbreviations

Apostrophes are often misused, and knowing when and when not to use them can be confusing. Of all the punctuation marks, the apostrophe is the one most likely to be misused. Fortunately, there are a few simple rules; if you follow them, you won’t go wrong with apostrophes.

The Rules

1. Use an apostrophe to show possession: Jack’s book.

2. Use an apostrophe to make a contraction: We don’t like broccoli.

3. Do not use an apostrophe to make a plural: I have two apples (not apple’s).

Possessives

The following rules show you how to use apostrophes to show possession.
■ Singular noun: add ’s
  the child’s cap
■ Singular noun ending in ss: add ’
  the hostess’ home
■ Plural noun ending in s: add ’
  the lawyers’ bills
■ Plural noun not ending in s: add ’s
  The Children’s Museum, the men’s clothes
■ Proper noun (name): add ’s
  Jenny’s watch, Chris’s car, the Jones’s house
■ Singular indefinite pronoun: add ’s
  one’s only hope
■ Plural indefinite pronoun: add ’
  all the others’ votes
■ Compound noun: add ’ or ’s after the final word
  the men-at-arms’ task, my mother-in-law’s house
■ Joint possession: add ’s to the final name
  Jim and Fred’s coffee house
■ Separate possession: add ’s after both names
  Betty’s and Ching’s menus

**Contractions**
A contraction is formed by putting two words together and omitting one or more letters. The idea is that you add an apostrophe to show that letters have been left out. For example, “We have decided to move to Alaska” becomes, “We’ve decided to move to Alaska.”

Here’s a list of some of the most common contractions:
he will = he’ll
I will = I’ll
we will = we’ll
it is = it’s
she is = she’s
you are = you’re
they are = they’re
we are = we’re
cannot = can’t
do not = don’t
does not = doesn’t
have not = haven’t
should not = shouldn’t
will not = won’t

There are other ways in which an apostrophe can represent missing letters:
■ In dialect: “I’m goin’ down to the swimmin’ hole,” said the boy.
■ When the letter o represents of: “Top o’ the morning to you.”

**Spelling Practice 10**
Practice using apostrophes by correcting the following sentences.

81. Mrs. Clarks’ store had been built in the 1970s.
82. Everyones lawn chair’s were stored in John and Marys backyard.
83. They had gone to the ladies room to powder their nose’s.
84. Wed rather have dinner at my mother-in-laws house next door.
85. Shouldnt he pick up his fax’s before he goes home?

**Abbreviations**
Many words and expressions in English are shortened by means of abbreviations. Though certain abbreviations are not usually used in formal writing, such as abbreviations for days of the week, they can be useful in less formal situations. Abbreviations are usually followed by periods.
The Exceptions

- Don’t use periods with the two-letter postal code abbreviations for states: CA, FL, IL, NJ, NY, TX, and so on.
- Don’t use periods for initials representing a company or agency: FBI, CBS, NFL.
- Don’t use periods after the letters in acronyms.

Common Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Names of days</td>
<td>Sun., Mon., Tues., Wed., etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of months</td>
<td>Jan., Feb., Mar., Apr., etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titles and degrees</td>
<td>Mr., Mrs., Ms., Esq., Dr., Hon., M.D., Ph.D., Ed.D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rank</td>
<td>Sgt., Capt., Maj., Col., Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business terms</td>
<td>C.O.D. (collect on delivery), Mfg. (Manufacturing), Inc. (Incorporated), Assn. (Association), Ltd. (Limited)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling Practice 11

Circle the correct bold term in each sentence.

86. I will have two (**weeks’**) vacation in (**Nov.)** this year.

87. Gen. (**Jones’s**) order was to leave on (**Sund.)**

88. My letter to my professor was addressed, “Mary Stevens, (**Ph.D.)**”

89. (**Les and Larry’s**) mopeds were parked outside.

90. The ancient Greeks worshipped at the (**goddess’s**) shrine every spring.
Answers

Spelling Practice 1
1. niece
2. seize
3. height, weight
4. relieved
5. reign
6. cashier
7. surveillance
8. frieze
9. chief
10. fiend

Spelling Practice 2
11. knight
12. answer
13. debt
14. gnarled
15. indict
16. psalm
17. subtle
18. ghost
19. often
20. autumn

Spelling Practice 3
21. finally
22. submitting, submitted
23. thinking
24. roaming, roamed
25. controlling, controlled
26. plainness
27. rebelling, rebelled
28. throbbing, throbbed
29. legally
30. raining, rained

Spelling Practice 4
31. cymbal
32. generous
33. trafficking
34. general
35. circulate

Spelling Practice 5
36. weak
37. bear
38. minor
39. peel
40. which
41. site
42. right
43. cord
44. past
45. descent

Spelling Practice 6
46. surprising
47. desirable
48. courageous
49. scarcity
50. peaceable
51. advertisement
52. careless
53. politeness
54. argument
55. disgraceful

Spelling Practice 7
56. attorneys
57. relaying
58. enjoyable
59. playing
60. annoyance
61. hurries
62. heartily
63. studying
64. angrily
65. plentiful
Spelling Practice 8
66. faxes
67. flashes
68. matches
69. guesses
70. skills
71. potatoes
72. sopranos
73. heroes
74. pianos
75. tomatoes

Spelling Practice 9
76. illogical
77. collating
78. irreverent
79. commentator
80. collaborated

Spelling Practice 10
81. Clark’s
82. Everyone’s, chairs, Mary’s
83. ladies’, noses
84. We’d, mother-in-law’s
85. Shouldn’t, faxes

Spelling Practice 11
86. weeks’, Nov.
87. Jones’s, Sun.
88. Ph.D.
89. Les’s and Larry’s
90. Goddess’
In order to be able to unlock the meaning of many words in the English language, it is useful for you to understand what a prefix is. A prefix is a word part at the beginning of a word that changes or adds to the meaning of the root word in some way. By learning some common prefixes, you will be able to decipher the meaning of many words that are unfamiliar to you. After you have completed the exercises in this chapter, you will become acquainted with the meanings of the more common prefixes, which will improve your reading, speaking, and listening vocabularies.

CHAPTER SUMMARY
When actors analyze a character, they break the person’s characteristics down into personality, mannerisms, and appearance in order to see what makes them tick. You do much the same thing when you analyze a word. Breaking a new word down into its parts can help you determine its meaning.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 1: Prefixes**

antecedent
antipathy
circumvent
consensus
controversy
decimate
demote
disinterested
euphemism
exorbitant
illegible
intermittent
malevolent
precursor
prognosis
retrospect
subordinate
synthesis
transcend
trivial

**Across**
4 medical "forecast"
5 unimportant
6 avoid, elude
8 occasional
9 preexistent, previous
11 the opposite of promote
12 excessive
13 integration
14 inferior
17 hindsight
18 predecessor
19 sinister, venomous

**Down**
1 destroy
2 to exceed
3 unreadable
6 dispute, argument
7 neutral, unprejudiced
10 general agreement
15 aversion, loathing
16 an expression for
antecedent  (an·tiˈsēdˌənt)  
prefix: ante means before  
(adj.)  
going before in time  
The VCR was a(n) _________ to the DVD player.

antipathy  (an·ˈtipəˈthē)  
prefix: anti means against  
(noun)  
revulsion, any object of strong dislike  
I have a severe _________ toward cockroaches.

circumvent  (sərˈkəmˌvent)  
prefix: circum and circ mean around  
(verb)  
to go around; to catch in a trap; to gain superiority over; to prevent from happening  
I tried to _________ any ill will between my two employees by giving them both a promotion.

consensus  (kənˈsenˌsəs)  
prefix: con means with, together  
(noun)  
agreement, especially in opinion  
The family finally reached a _________ and decided to adopt a dog from the pound.

controversy  (ˈkənˌtrəˈverˌsē)  
prefix: contr means against  
(noun)  
a discussion of a question in which opposing views clash  
There is a _________ in my building about whether or not to implement a flip tax.

decimate  (ˈdesˌiˈmāt)  
prefix: dec means ten  
(verb)  
to destroy or kill a large portion of something, to take or destroy a tenth part of something  
Humans continue to _________ the rainforest every day.

demote  (diˈmōt)  
prefix: de means down, away from  
(verb)  
to lower in grade or position  
The company had to _________ the vice president due to an economic downturn.

disinterested  (disˈiənˈtərəstəd)  
prefix: dis means not, opposite of  
(adj.)  
not motivated by personal interest or selfish motives  
He is the most _________ politician running for office this term.

euphemism  (ˈu+fəˈmizm)  
prefix: eu means good, well  
(noun)  
the use of a word or phrase that is considered less distasteful or offensive than another  
“Bachelorette” is a _________ for “spinster.”

exorbitant  (ekˈzorˈbītənt)  
prefix: ex means out of, away from  
(adj.)  
going beyond what is reasonable and proper  
The _________ cost of real estate in the big cities forces many people to move to the suburbs.

illegible  (iˈlejəˈbəl)  
prefix: il means not, opposite  
(adj.)  
not able to be read  
Because my handwriting is _________, I always type my papers.
intermittent (in-tər-mit-ənt)
prefix: inter means between
(adj.)
stopping and starting again at intervals

storms made for a turbulent flight.

malevolent (mə-lev-ə-lent)
prefix: mal means bad
(adj.)
having an evil disposition toward others
After losing her job, she became ________ toward those who became successful.

precursor (pre-kər-sər)
prefix: pre means before
(noun)
a forerunner, a harbinger, one who or that which goes before
My boss’s ________ left the department in shambles.

prognosis (prog-nōsis)
prefix: pro means before
(noun)
a forecast; especially in medicine
Even though my dog is old, her ________ for recovery is excellent.

retrospect (ret-rō-spekt)
prefix: retro means back, again
(verb)
to think about the past
(noun)
looking back on or thinking about things past
In ________, I realized that perhaps I was too harsh with her.

subordinate (sub-or-din-it)
prefix: sub means under
(adj.)
inferior to or placed below another in rank, power, or importance
(a person or thing of lesser power or importance than another
(verb) (sub-or-din-āt)
to treat as inferior or less important
No one wanted to work for her because she treated those who were ________ to her without respect.

synthesis (‘sin-thō-sis)
prefix: syn, sym means with or together
(noun)
putting of two or more things together to form a whole
The ________ between the two elements created a poisonous mixture.

transcend (tran-send)
prefix: trans means across
(verb)
to go beyond the limits of; to overstep; to exceed
Knowing him, he will ________ this setback and still win the marathon.

trivial (‘triv-ē-əl)
prefix: tri means three
(adj.)
of little worth or importance
Although everyone was excited about the new development, it became clear that it was ________ and would not benefit the company in any way.
Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 1 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

In our country, the use of nuclear power as a viable source of energy has been an ongoing controversy. During the gas and oil shortages of the 1970s, energy prices were exorbitant. The federal government supported nuclear power as a new energy source that would be cost effective. Now, the president’s National Energy Policy Report lists nuclear power as a safe and affordable alternative. Today, however, as in the past, many people have voiced their antipathy toward nuclear power plants, especially in the wake of the 1979 partial meltdown of the Three Mile Island nuclear power plant. At that time, scientists scrambled to circumvent a total meltdown in a facility that was designed to be fail-safe. There was great fear that the meltdown would be complete and decimate the area. Now, the federal government is once again promoting this alternative energy source.

Sentence Completion
Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 1 into the following sentences.

1. World leaders and anti-globalization protesters are at odds in the continuing _____________ about how to assist sluggish world economies.

2. At the Cradle of Aviation Museum, a _________________ of man’s first trip to the moon in 1969 will include a restored lunar module.

3. Soon after the war began in Bosnia in April 1992, the damaged buildings and burned homes reduced the country to ruins and _________________ the landscape.

4. Scientists have discovered what could be the closest _________________ to man, an upright ape-like creature.

5. The stock market has on average declined over the past year, with _________________ periods of growth.

6. Oprah Winfrey was able to _________________ her humble roots to become one of the nation’s most respected, wealthy, and powerful women.

7. The police department’s crime stopper’s unit placed a drawing and description of the _________________ kidnapper in the newspaper.

8. Errors caused by physicians’ _________________ handwriting have sparked proposals to add handwriting courses to medical school curricula.

9. After the implantation of a heart pacemaker, the patient’s _________________ was good.

10. “Downsizing a company” is a _________________ for letting go or firing employees.
11. Different ethnic groups' ____________ toward each other has resulted in many wars throughout the world.

12. Because of the ____________ price and gas consumption of the sports utility vehicle, the first-time buyer selected a small, energy-efficient sedan.

13. After the ____________ successfully increased the company’s sales and production, the chief executive officer promoted her to regional sales manager.

14. Environmentalists and energy analysts have not reached a ____________ about how best to meet America’s growing energy needs in a safe and financially sound manner.

15. Due to his mistreatment of fellow officers, the captain was ____________ to the rank of sergeant.

16. The famous actor seemed ____________ in fame and the constant media attention he received; he continued to live his life in the same way as before his rise to fame.

17. A patchwork quilt is the result of the ____________ of many smaller pieces sewn together to make a unique design.

18. In order to ____________ the impending storm, the pilot changed his flight plan to avoid turbulence and lightning.

19. My ____________ were some of the first colonial activists in the United States; they took part in the Boston Tea Party.

20. What some may consider ____________ or unimportant ideas sometimes blossom into good business ventures.

**Synonyms**

The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. controversy
   a. dispute
   b. quarrel
   c. consensus
   d. debate
   e. disputation

22. disinterested
   a. selfish
   b. impartial
   c. neutral
   d. objective
   e. unbiased

23. antipathy
   a. aversion
   b. dislike
   c. hatred
   d. sympathy
   e. abhorrence

24. exorbitant
   a. reasonable
   b. excessive
   c. overpriced
   d. inflated
   e. steep
25. intermittent  
   a. sporadic  
   b. alternating  
   c. recurring  
   d. occasional  
   e. continual

26. malevolent  
   a. malicious  
   b. spiteful  
   c. nasty  
   d. disinterested  
   e. wicked

27. transcend  
   a. exceed  
   b. descend  
   c. excel  
   d. surpass  
   e. outdo

28. precursor  
   a. successor  
   b. forerunner  
   c. ancestor  
   d. antecedent  
   e. predecessor

29. synthesis  
   a. mixture  
   b. fusion  
   c. separation  
   d. amalgamation  
   e. blend

30. decimate  
   a. demolish  
   b. annihilate  
   c. build  
   d. slaughter  
   e. kill

**Antonyms**

Choose the word from Vocabulary List 1 that means the opposite, or most nearly the opposite, of the following groups of words.

31. descendant, successor, progeny, heir

32. readable, decipherable, comprehensible, clear

33. direct, face, aim, confront

34. disagreement, wrangle, conflict, dissent

35. promote, encourage, sponsor, support

36. benevolent, caring, compassionate, kindly

37. leading, chief, primary, foremost

38. trail, follow, tail, drag
**Matching Questions**

Match the word in the first column with the corresponding word in the second column.

41. circumvent a. dispute
42. retrospect b. combination
43. euphemism c. excessive
44. precursor d. destroy
45. synthesis e. skirt
46. antipathy f. predecessor
47. disinterested g. hindsight
48. exorbitant h. pleasant substitute words
49. controversy i. hatred
50. decimate j. neutral

**Practice Activities**

Write ten words that begin with the same prefixes as the words in this unit. Write your definition of each word based on what you already know about each prefix. Be sure to check your answers with a dictionary definition of each word.

Example: *preactivity* means a warm-up activity that comes before the main activity.

Create a personal “pictionary” prefix book. List common prefixes along with their definitions and create drawings that remind you of their meanings.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Illustration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anti</td>
<td>against</td>
<td>🚭 to show you are against smoking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Answers

Words in Context
We learn that nuclear energy has its supporters and opponents who continually debate each other; therefore, controversy means a public dispute. We read that energy prices were exorbitant and the government began to promote nuclear power as a financially reasonable alternative. The implication is that exorbitant is excessive. After reading what has gone wrong with one particular power plant, we can infer that antipathy refers to the negative feelings of a significant portion of the population who oppose and intensely dislike the idea of nuclear power plants. After the disaster, we learn that scientists tried to circumvent, or prevent, a total meltdown. Finally, it was necessary for the scientists to stop a complete meltdown because it would decimate, or totally destroy, the area. The partial meltdown of the reactor was disastrous enough, so the result of a total meltdown would be unimaginable destruction.

Sentence Completion
1. controversy. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. retrospect. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. decimated. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. precursor. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. intermittent. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. transcend. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. malevolent. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. illegible. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. prognosis. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. euphemism. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. antipathy. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
12. exorbitant. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
13. subordinate. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. consensus. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. demoted. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. disinterested. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
17. synthesis. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
18. circumvent. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
19. antecedents. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
20. trivial. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

Synonyms
21. c. consensus. Controversy is a discussion where opposing views clash. Therefore, consensus would not be a synonym of the word because it means to come to an agreement.
22. a. selfish. Disinterested means not motivated by personal interest. Therefore, selfish would not be a synonym of the word because it means the opposite—to have a personal interest.
23. d. sympathy. Antipathy means to have a feeling of hatred toward someone or something. Since sympathy means to have feelings of compassion for someone or something, it cannot be a synonym of the word.
24. a. reasonable. Exorbitant means excessive; thus, reasonable is the opposite in meaning and cannot be a synonym.

25. e. continual. Intermittent means to happen at regular intervals whereas continual means without stopping; therefore, it cannot be the synonym of the word.

26. d. disinterested. Malevolent means to have evil feelings and intentions toward someone or something. Disinterested means to be neutral about someone or something; thus, it cannot be the synonym of the word.

27. b. descend. Transcend means to go beyond whereas descend means to go below and cannot be a synonym of the word.

28. a. successor. A precursor is something that comes before. Successor cannot be a synonym because it means something that comes after.

29. c. separation. A synthesis is a blending together of things to form something; therefore, separation cannot be a synonym of the word.

30. c. build. Decimate means to destroy; therefore, build cannot be a synonym of the word.

Antonyms

31. antecedent. Antecedent means ancestors, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

32. illegible. Illegible means unreadable, the opposite of the words in the group.

33. circumvent. Circumvent means to go around, the opposite of the words in the group.

34. consensus. Consensus means agreement, the opposite of the words in the group.

35. demote. Demote means to downgrade, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

36. malevolent. Malevolent means evil, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

37. subordinate. Subordinate means secondary, the opposite of the meaning of the words group.

38. transcend. Transcend means exceed, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

39. trivial. Trivial means unimportant, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

40. intermittent. Intermittent means interrupted, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

Matching Questions

41. e

42. g

43. h

44. f

45. b

46. i

47. j

48. c

49. a

50. d
Across
4 prognosis
5 trivial
6 circumvent
8 intermittent
9 antecedent
11 demote
12 exorbitant
13 synthesis
14 subordinate
17 retrospect
18 precursor
19 malevolent

Down
1 decimate
2 transcend
3 illegible
6 controversy
7 disinterested
10 consensus
15 antipathy
16 euphemism
Word endings that are added to the main part, or root, of words are called suffixes. Suffixes are word parts that signal how a word is being used in a sentence. Suffixes often change the part of speech of a word.

For example, take a look at the word *deferment* from this chapter’s vocabulary list. *Deferment* is a noun that means a postponement. If the suffix (-ment) is removed, the word becomes *defer*, and it is used as a verb that means to postpone.

As a verb, it appears as *defer*:
I will *defer* the payment until next month.

As a noun, it appears as it is:
The bank gave him a *deferment*.

As an adjective, it appears as *deferred*:
The *deferred* payment is due in one month.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You will use 17 of the words from the Vocabulary List to solve the puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 2: Suffixes**
bigotry
consummate
copious
cryptic
deferment
exacerbate
etymology
furtive
laudable
mutation
obsolescence
parity
pragmatism
protagonist
provocative
puerile
rectify
releless
satirize
venerate

**Across**
4 to correct, make right
6 uselessness
11 praiseworthy
13 change, variation
15 to honor
16 obscure, secret

**Down**
1 perfect, complete, accomplished
2 bountiful
3 delay
4 unceasing
5 irritating, stirring into action
7 to make worse
8 practicality
9 childish
10 stealthy
12 prejudice, intolerance
14 equality
The table above shows the suffixes that are used in this Vocabulary List. They are divided into the parts of speech, or the “jobs” they suggest for the words. Other words that contain those suffixes are listed. In the last column, add at least one other word that uses the suffix, besides the one in today’s Vocabulary List.

### NOUN ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-tion</td>
<td>act or state of</td>
<td>benefaction, conservation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ment</td>
<td>quality</td>
<td>comportment, indictment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ist</td>
<td>one who</td>
<td>archaeologist, biologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ism</td>
<td>state or doctrine of</td>
<td>absolutism, altruism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ity</td>
<td>state of being</td>
<td>sanity, scarcity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ology</td>
<td>study of</td>
<td>theology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-escence</td>
<td>state of</td>
<td>acquiescence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y, -ary</td>
<td>act or state of</td>
<td>flattery, commentary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ADJECTIVE ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-able</td>
<td>capable</td>
<td>dependable, believable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ic</td>
<td>causing, making</td>
<td>eccentric, optimistic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ian</td>
<td>one who is or does</td>
<td>politician, statistician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ile</td>
<td>pertaining to</td>
<td>reptile, fertile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ious</td>
<td>having the quality of</td>
<td>delicious, superstitious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ive</td>
<td>having the nature of</td>
<td>decisive, incisive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-less</td>
<td>without</td>
<td>senseless, painless</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### VERB ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ize</td>
<td>to bring about</td>
<td>aggrandize, monopolize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ate</td>
<td>to make</td>
<td>operate, translate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ify</td>
<td>to make</td>
<td>verify, magnify</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**agrarian** (əˈgrərēˈən)  
suffix: -ian means one who is or does  
(_adj.)  
having to do with agriculture or farming  
The farmer loved his _________ life.
antagonist  (an-ˈta-gə-nist)
suffix: -ist means one who
(noun)
one that contends with or opposes another
In the movie Batman, the Joker is Batman's ________.

bigotry  (ˈbīg-ə-trē)
suffix: -ry means state of
(noun)
unreasonable zeal in favor of a party, sect, or opinion; excessive prejudice
________ can lead to malevolent actions.

consummate  (ˈkən-səm-māt)
suffix: -ate means to make
(verb)
to complete, to carry to the utmost degree
The business woman needed to ________ the deal quickly.

copious  (ˈkōp-ə-sōs)
suffix: -ious means having the quality of
(adj.)
abundant; plentiful; in great quantities
A ________ amount of sunshine is predicted for the summer.

cryptic  (ˈkrip-tik)
suffix: -ic means causing
(adj.)
hidden; secret; having a hidden or ambiguous meaning
The detective uncovered the meaning of the ________ message.

deferment  (di-ˈfər-mənt)
suffix: -ment means quality of
(noun)
the act of putting off or delaying; postponement
The bank offered the struggling college graduate a ________ on his student loan payment.

exacerbate  (ig-ˈza-sər-bāt)
suffix: -ate means to make
(verb)
to make more violent, bitter, or severe
The cold weather ________ her dry skin.

furtive  (ˈfər-tiv)
suffix: -ive means having the nature of
(adj.)
done in a stealthy manner; sly and underhanded
The two criminals who were in cahoots gave each other ________ looks behind the detective's back.

laudable  (ˈlau-də-bəl)
suffix: -able means capable of
(adj.)
praiseworthy
Her dedication and ability to rehabilitate the injured is ________.

geology  (jē-ˈa-lə-jē)
suffix: -ology means study of
(noun)
the study of the history of the earth and its life, especially as recorded in rocks
The ________ major traveled to Mt. Etna to examine the effects of the volcano's most recent eruption.

minimize  (ˈmi-nə-mīz)
suffix: -ize means to subject to an action
(verb)
to play down; to keep to a minimum
The president tried to ________ his involvement in the trial so that he would not be implicated in the scandal.

mutation  (mə-ˈtā-ˈshən)
suffix: -tion means action of, state of
(noun)
the act or process of changing
Scientists research gene ________ in fruit flies to see how genes change from one generation to the next.
obsolescence (äb-sə-ləs-ənss)  
*noun*  
the state of being outdated  
With the advent of the personal computer, the typewriter has been in ________ for many years.

parity (ˈpar-ə-tē)  
*noun*  
the state or condition of being the same in power, value or rank; equality  
Women and minorities continue to fight for ________ in the workplace.

pragmatism (ˈprä-gə-mə-tizm)  
*noun*  
faith in the practical approach  
Her ________ has helped her start her own business and maintain it for many years.

provocative (prō-ˈvok-ə-tiv)  
*adj.*  
something that stirs up an action  
His ________ speech caused many to support his campaign.

puerile (ˈpyoo-rə-ləl)  
*adj.*  
childish, silly, immature  
Based on Jared’s ________ behavior, one would think he is a teenager rather than a father of two.

rectify (ˈrek-ti-fi)  
*verb*  
to make right; to correct  
I tried to ________ the situation by seating the two employees in different departments.

rebellious (re-ˈbell-ə-ləs)  
*adj.*  
without  
I was ________ with my athletic training when I was preparing for the Regionals.

venerate (ˈven-ə-rət)  
*verb*  
to look upon with deep respect and reverence  
My parents taught me to ________ my teachers.

**Words in Context**

The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 2 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

The latest remake of *Planet of the Apes* develops the theme of *bigotry* in a world where apes are the dominant culture and humans are enslaved. *Parity* between the two species is unthinkable because the simians regard humans as inferior creatures. Leo, the central character, is the story’s protagonist. He is a human astronaut who lands on a strange planet where apes *venerate* their own kind by offering praise and promotions for negative actions taken against humans. Leo’s *antagonist*, General Thade, is the leader of the apes in this bizarre culture, and encourages the mistreatment of humans by apes. In General Thade’s opinion, extermination of the humans is a *laudable* cause and he mounts a full-scale campaign to exterminate humans from the planet.
**Sentence Completion**
Insert the word from Vocabulary List 2 that best completes the sentences.

1. Pulitzer Prize-winning novelist Eudora Welty was ________ in her obituary.

2. You would never accuse Mark of ________; he’s the most open-minded person I know.

3. It took several months to ________ the merger, but after tough negotiation, the two companies became one.

4. The young boy’s removal from the little league game was due to his ________ behavior of throwing the bat when he was angry.

5. Rainforests are known for their ________ amounts of rainfall that supply the fauna with many nutrients.

6. During WWII, Native Americans worked to develop a ________ code that could not be deciphered by the enemy.

7. Because of the family’s ________ search, they were quickly reunited with their lost dog.

8. My little brother is the ________ in the family; he constantly provokes fights with my sister and me.

9. Wear these protective goggles to ________ your chances of injury to your eyes.

10. Due to the ________ of the budget director’s financial policies, the economy grew stronger.

11. In order to ________ the wrongdoing of the internment of innocent Japanese Americans during WWII, the U.S. government has agreed to pay reparations to victims.

12. A ________ in certain strains of powerful bacteria has turned them into drug-resistant menaces.

13. The actions of a few skittish animals ________ the majority of horses to stampede.

14. Union officials continuously fight for ________ in pay and working conditions.

15. The horse and buggy reached its ________ in the early 1900s with the production of the automobile.

16. In order to entice the consumer, companies will offer a short-term ________ on payments for buying merchandise.

17. I loved studying ________ because I enjoyed looking at interesting rocks and how they came to be on Earth.

18. The young teen’s heroic effort to save the family from the sinking car was ________.

19. The spy’s disguise and ________ actions were undetected by foreign government officials.

20. The haying season is my favorite part of ________ life.
Synonyms
The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. relentless
   a. unstoppable
   b. persistent
   c. unyielding
   d. capitulate
   e. inexorable

22. laudable
   a. praiseworthy
   b. worthy
   c. commendable
   d. creditable
   e. furtive

23. parity
   d. equity
   b. inequality
   c. par
   d. fairness
   e. evenhandedness

24. venerate
   a. respect
   b. honor
   c. minimize
   d. revere
   e. worship

25. puerile
   a. childish
   b. juvenile
   c. mature
   d. infantile
   e. babyish

26. furtive
   a. stealthy
   b. secret
   c. sly
   d. honest
   e. surreptitious

27. copious
   a. scarce
   b. abundant
   c. numerous
   d. plentiful
   e. profuse

28. cryptic
   a. mysterious
   b. enigmatic
   c. puzzling
   d. obvious
   e. secret

29. provocative
   a. challenging
   b. inciting
   c. stimulating
   d. confrontational
   e. conciliatory

30. mutation
   a. static
   b. changing
   c. transformation
   d. metamorphosis
   e. alteration
**Antonyms**
Choose the word from Vocabulary List 2 that means the opposite, or most nearly the opposite, of the following groups of words.

31. curtail, shorten, curb, limit

32. tolerance, broadmindedness, open-mindedness, acceptance

33. impracticality, uselessness, fruitlessness, pointlessness

34. straightforward, forthright, candid, up-front

35. scarce, limited, inadequate, scant

36. protagonist, leader, hero, supporter

37. inequality, inequity, discrimination, disparity

38. urban, city, metropolitan, cosmopolitan

39. despise, loathe, scorn, hate

40. magnify, intensify, enhance, overplay

**Choosing the Right Word**
Circle the word in bold that best completes the sentence.

41. Since I grew up on a ranch in Montana, I appreciate the constant struggle of the (antagonist, agrarian) lifestyle.

42. She filled an entire notebook with the (copious, laudable) notes that she took during the class.

43. The car salesman wanted to (consummate, rectify) the car deal before the customers changed their minds.

44. Her (cryptic, puerile) behavior made her seem childish and immature.

45. The automotive industry builds a certain amount of (pragmatism, obsolescence) into cars so that they will need to be replaced in few years.

46. Language interpreters can even decipher (provocative, cryptic) phrases that most people wouldn’t understand.

47. In order to eliminate (bigotry, geology) many schools have included programs to reduce hatred of others and increase tolerance.
48. The Coast Guard’s (relentless, furtive) search for any survivors of the airplane crash lasted three weeks.

49. In some cultures, people (minimize, venerate) their elders by seeking their wisdom.

50. Scientists can monitor the (mutation, deferment) of certain bacteria by watching them change form over time.

Practice Activities
List all the words in this chapter and try changing the part of speech of each word by changing its suffix. For instance, change deferment to deferred or defer. Be sure to check the definition of the altered word.

Example: Venerate changed to veneration means a feeling of deep respect.

Find words in the newspaper that have the same suffixes as the words in this unit. Write them next to the chapter words and take a guess at their meanings. Check your definition with a dictionary definition.

For example, one of the suffixes in the vocabulary list is “tion,” which means state of or action of. You might find in the newspaper the word evolution, meaning the act of changing over a period of time.
Words in Context
After reading the paragraph, we learn that the movie Planet of the Apes is an upside-down world where apes rule over humans and believe them to be inferior creatures whose only use are to be slaves; thus, we may conclude that bigotry means intolerance. Since the humans are slaves, their ape owners would not want them to achieve parity; therefore, the inference is that parity means equality. Leo, the central character, is the protagonist. Therefore, we know that antagonist must mean someone who is opposing him, because Thade mounts an attempt to exterminate humans and we know that Leo is a human. The story shows the antipathy, the hatred, between apes and humans. The apes venerate, show respect, and honor their leaders. They respect their species and reward laudable deeds such as capturing escaped humans. We can infer that laudable means praiseworthy.

Sentence Completion
1. venerated. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. bigotry. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. consummate. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. puerile. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. copious. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. cryptic. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. relentless. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. antagonist. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. minimize. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. pragmatism. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

Synonyms
21. d. capitulate. Relentless means to never give up, so capitulate would not be a synonym of the word, since it means to surrender.
22. e. furtive. Laudable means worthy of praise, so furtive would not be a synonym of the word, since it means sneaky.
23. b. inequality. Parity means equality, thus inequality would not be a synonym of the word because it means not to be equal.
24. c. minimize. Venerate means to hold in the highest regard, so minimize would not be a synonym of the word, since it means to play down or keep to a minimum.
25. c. mature. Puerile means childish, so mature would not be a synonym of the word, since it means grown-up.
26. **d. honest.** Furtive means sneaky and underhanded, so honest would not be a synonym of the word, since it means open.

27. **a. scarce.** Copious means plentiful, so scarce would not be a synonym of the word, since it means in short supply.

28. **d. obvious.** Cryptic means hidden, so obvious would not be a synonym of the word, since it means clear.

29. **e. conciliatory.** Provocative means inciting to action, so conciliatory would not be a synonym of the word, since it means appeasing.

30. **a. static.** Mutation means to change in form, so static would not be a synonym of the word since it means unchanging.

**Antonyms**

31. **consummate.** Consummate means to complete, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

32. **bigotry.** Bigotry means narrow-mindedness, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

33. **pragmatism.** Pragmatism means common sense, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

34. **furtive.** Furtive means secretive, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

35. **copious.** Copious means plentiful, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

36. **antagonist.** An antagonist is opposition or an adversary, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

37. **parity.** Parity means equality, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

38. **agrarian.** Agrarian means having to do with farming and agriculture, the opposite of the words in the group.

39. **venerate.** Venerate means to honor, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

40. **minimize.** Minimize means to play down or keep to a minimum, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

**Choosing the Right Word**

41. **agrarian.** Context clue is the ranch in Montana; life on a ranch would have to do with agriculture and farming.

42. **copious.** Context clue is that she filled a notebook with her notes.

43. **consummate.** Context clue is that the car salesman wanted the customers to finish the transaction by buying a car.

44. **puerile.** Context clue is that her behavior appeared childish and immature.

45. **obsolescence.** Context clue is that the car industry makes cars that eventually must be replaced.

46. **cryptic.** Context clue is that most people wouldn’t understand the phrase.

47. **bigotry.** Context clue is that many schools have programs to reduce hatred.

48. **relentless.** Context clue is that the Coast Guard searched for three weeks.

49. **venerate.** Context clue is that people in some cultures seek their elder’s wisdom.

50. **mutation.** Context clue is that the bacteria change over time.
Across
4 rectify
6 obsolescence
11 laudable
13 mutation
15 venerate
16 cryptic

Down
1 consummate
2 copious
3 deferment
4 relentless
5 provocative
7 exacerbate
8 pragmatism
9 puerile
10 furtive
12 bigotry
14 parity
Just as a good gardener builds a lovely garden by having its plants maintain strong, healthy roots, you will see your vocabulary grow by recognizing common roots. Although it is the main part of a word, a root is not necessarily a complete word. It is the base to which a prefix and/or suffix might be added.

In this chapter, you will become familiar with 20 common roots. Connected to these roots are various suffixes that you have already become acquainted with in Chapter 5. You are on your way toward building a strong vocabulary by making the connections between these word parts and recognizing their meanings.

CHAPTER SUMMARY
Becoming familiar with Greek and Latin roots will help you build your vocabulary by helping you recognize the base of many words.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 3: Learning Roots**

agonize
audible
belligerent
chronic
demographic
fidelity
fluctuate
genocide
incognito
inducement
interrogate
loquacious
nominal
pathos
protracted
rejected
sophisticated
tenacious
verify
vivacious

**Across**
1. persistent
2. discarded
4. to provoke
6. question, investigate
7. talkative, garrulous
8. statistical characteristics of human populations
11. hostile, aggressive
12. pathetic quality
15. faithfulness
16. lively, ebullient

**Down**
1. confirm
3. incentive
5. able to be heard
9. able to be heard
10. undercover
13. intentional destruction of an entire group of people
14. small amount
17. experienced and aware
18. change often
19. constant, continuous
20. drawn out
agonize (ˈa-gə-niz)
root: agon means struggle, contest
(verb)
to suffer intense pain, to struggle over something
As a teacher, I _______ over how to reprimand my students.

audible (ˈō-də-bəl)
root: aud means hear
(adj.)
able to heard
Something was wrong with the sound system, so the lead singer’s voice was barely ________.

belligerent (bəl·lij·ər·ənt)
root: bell means war
(adj.)
warlike, hostile
I don’t know what got into Margo; she became ________ when they told her that the class was full.

chronic (ˈkrōn·ik)
root: chron means time
(adj.)
constant, habitual
Living with ________ pain can be exhausting.

demographic (dem·ə·graf·ik)
root: dem means people
(noun)
statistical characteristics of human population, such as age or income
The ________ information we received helped us create a marketing plan.

fidelity (fi·ˈdel·i·tē)
root: fid means faith
(noun)
faithfulness
One thing I will never question is her ________; she is one of the most loyal people I know.

fluctuate (ˈflük·chu·āt)
root: flux, flu means to flow
(verb)
to move up and down, constantly changing
My weight tends to ________ according to the seasons.

genocide (ˈjen·ə-sīd)
root: gen means race or kind
(noun)
the deliberate extermination of an entire group of people
Mass ________ is an atrocity that many times happens during civil war.

incognito (in·kō·né·tō)
root: cog, gno means to know
(noun)
disguised, unrecognizable
I had to go to the party ________ in order to supervise my daughter and her friends.

inducement (in·ˈdūs·mənt)
root: duc means lead
(noun)
motive, leading to an action, incentive
As a(n) ________, they offered free appetizers to anyone arriving between 9 and 10.

interrogate (in·ˈter·ə·gät)
root: rog means to ask
(verb)
to question
Customs agents have the right to ________ passengers.
VOCABULARY LIST 3: LEARNING ROOTS

loquacious (lōˈkwā-shəs)
root: loq means speak
(adj.)
talkative
The ________ guest monopolized the conversation.

nominal (ˈnom-ən-əl)
root: nom means name
(adj.)
in name only, small amount
She expended only ________ energy during the heat wave so that she wouldn’t collapse.

pathos (ˈpā-thōs)
root: path means feelings
(noun)
suffering; feeling of sympathy or pity
Children who are raised to feel ________ are not usually bullies.

protracted (prōˈtrak-ted)
root: tract means draw; pull
(adj.)
drawn out in time, prolonged
The union and the city could not agree on contractual terms, which led to a ________ settlement.

rejected (riˈjekt-ed)
root: ject means to throw or send
(verb)
sent back, refused, discarded
She ________ his offer of marriage, so he took the ring back to the jeweler.

sophisticated (saˈfis-ti-kā-ted)
root: soph means wisdom
(adj.)
knowledgeable; refined, experienced, and aware
The dance couple mastered the ________ jazz step.

tenacious (təˈnāshəs)
root: ten means hold
(adj.)
unwilling to let go, stubborn
The ________ grip of the pit bull is what makes it so dangerous.

verify (ˈver-ə-fi)
root: ver means truth
(verb)
to establish as truth, confirm
Scientists have not been able to ________ the existence of UFOs.

vivacious (viˈvā-shəs)
root: viv means life
(adj.)
lively in manner
The ________ teen became captain of the cheerleading team.

Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 3 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

Medical researchers can now verify that college freshman living in dormitories are at a greater risk of contracting meningitis than other college students. Meningococcal meningitis is a tenacious bacterial infection of membranes around the brain and spinal chord that, if left untreated, can be fatal. Symptoms include fever, neck stiffness, and constant pain from a chronic headache. College officials are using this information as an inducement for vaccinating incoming freshman. Many universities are now offering this vaccine either free or for a nominal fee. The vaccination’s protracted effectiveness is three to five years.
Sentence Completion
Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 3 into the following sentences.

1. Cambodian government officials are preparing to prosecute those leaders most responsible for the Khmer Rouge’s _______________ of one fifth of the total population of the country.

2. Almost every area of our lives will be affected by our country’s _______________ changes as the baby boomers age.

3. Some infomercials promise rock-hard abdominals as a/an _______________ to buy a variety of exercise machines.

4. Janice is awfully quiet and pale tonight; it’s such a contrast to her normally _______________ personality.

5. Because of the _______________, they feel for people, studies show that dogs in hospitals treat human patients with unconditional love.

6. During the annual San Fermin running of the bulls festival, spectators try to avoid the path of _______________ bulls.

7. After the car collision, the passenger suffered from _______________ back pain for the rest of his life.

8. Health fitness experts now _______________ that walking ranks as America’s most popular activity.

9. Temperatures in the desert can _______________ greatly from brutally hot during the day to freezing temperatures at night.

10. Because of their known _______________ toward their human companions, over one thousand dogs were sent overseas to protect American _______________ soldiers during the Vietnam War.

11. It’s hard for my grandfather not to _______________ over having to go into a retirement home as he wants to remain independent as long as possible.

12. Famous sports and movie personalities often travel _______________ in order to avoid being hounded by the media.

13. In order to _______________ the alleged thief, proper police procedures must be followed.

14. The celebrity guest was known for his exciting story telling; the talk-show host asked her _______________ guest to tell the story of his youth.

15. After placing their home for sale, the homeowners _______________ the first offer for their house because it was too low.

16. Even after being treated with strong antibiotics, the _______________ ear infection would not ease its grip on its victim.

17. The new stereo system made every sound, no matter how minute, clearly _______________.

18. The _______________ dispute between management and the team players lasted several years.

19. Since there was only a _______________ fee to enter the bike race, everyone could participate.
20. Animal cloning begins with a procedure where scientists remove the DNA-containing nucleus of a female animal’s egg and replace it with the genetic material from a body cell of an adult animal’s donor.

Synonyms
The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. vivacious
   a. cheerful
   b. bubbly
   c. animated
   d. tenacious
   e. spirited

22. interrogate
   a. grill
   b. verify
   c. ask
   d. cross-examine
   e. interview

23. fidelity
   a. betrayal
   b. devotion
   c. faithfulness
   d. reliability
   e. trustworthiness

24. chronic
   a. continuing
   b. constant
   c. intermittent
   d. unceasing
   e. never-ending

25. incognito
   a. disguised
   b. undercover
   c. anonymously
   d. secretly
   e. open

26. illegible
   a. indecipherable
   b. scrawled
   c. scribbled
   d. audible
   e. unreadable

27. fluctuate
   a. vary
   b. steady
   c. vacillate
   d. oscillate
   e. ebb and flow

28. agonize
   a. struggle
   b. torment
   c. contend
   d. upset
   e. endure

29. nominal
   a. supposed
   b. small amount
   c. actual
   d. in name only
   e. so-called

30. pathos
   a. sorrow
   b. joy
   c. suffering
   d. pity
   e. grief
Antonyms
Choose the word from Vocabulary List 3 that means the opposite, or most nearly the opposite, of the following groups of words.

31. passive, peaceful, nonviolent, diplomatic
   _______________

32. silent, reserved, reticent, taciturn
   _______________

33. disloyalty, betrayal, unfaithfulness, treachery
   _______________

34. accepted, agreed to, assented, wanted
   _______________

35. primitive, unrefined, uncultured, naïve
   _______________

36. agreeable, amenable, easygoing, flexible
   _______________

37. disprove, refute, invalidate, contradict
   _______________

38. candidly, openly, honestly, frankly
   _______________

39. languid, unenergetic, unhurried, lethargic
   _______________

40. brief, concise, short-lived, pithy
   _______________

Matching Questions
Match the word in the first column with the corresponding word in the second column.

41. genocide   a. sent back
    b. sympathy
    c. destruction of a race
    d. disguised

42. audible    e. talkative
    f. to suffer anguish
    g. can be heard
    h. loyalty

43. verify     i. stubborn
    j. prove

44. tenacious  k. pathos
    l. incognito
    m. disguised
    n. sympathy
Practice Activities

The following are words that have the same roots as the words in this chapter. Divide each word into its parts: prefix, root, suffix. See if you can recognize the meaning of the new words and check your answers using a dictionary.

agony, audit, antebellum, chronicle,
democracy, infidel, influx, progeny, diagnosis, surrogate, soliloquy, anonymous,
apathy, distracted, interjected, philosopher,
tenable, voracious, vivid

Select any five words from the list and create your own sentences.
Answers

Words in Context
Answer: After reading the paragraph, we learn that a study has been done that shows that college freshmen living in dormitories have a higher risk of getting meningitis; therefore, we can conclude that verify means confirm. Because this disease can be fatal, we can understand that once contracted, it is not easily wiped out; thus, we can infer that tenacious means persistent and not easily stopped. Since the symptoms include constant pain from a headache, we can deduce that chronic means continual. It makes sense that college officials are concerned about the possible outbreak of such a disease on campus and would take measures to prevent its occurrence, so we can infer that inducement means encouragement. Students would be encouraged to take the vaccine if it were free or inexpensive; therefore, we can see that nominal means a small amount. Finally, we can gather that protracted means drawn out by the mention that the vaccine will last from three to five years.

Sentence Completion
1. genocide. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. demographic. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. inducement. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. vivacious. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. pathos. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. belligerent. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. chronic. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. verify. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. fluctuate. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. fidelity. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. agonize. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
12. incognito. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
13. interrogate. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. loquacious. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. rejected. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. tenacious. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
17. audible. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
18. protracted. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
19. nominal. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
20. sophisticated. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

Synonyms
21. d. tenacious. Vivacious means lively, so tenacious would not be a synonym of the word, since it means stubborn.
22. b. verify. Interrogate means to question, so verify would not be a synonym of the word, since it means confirm.
23. a. betrayal. Fidelity means loyalty, so betrayal would not be synonym of the word, since it means disloyal.
24. c. **intermittent.** Chronic means recurring, so intermittent would not be a synonym of the word, since it means alternating.

25. e. **open.** Incognito means in disguise, so open would not be synonym of the word, since it means visible.

26. d. **audible.** Illegible means hard to read, so audible would not be a synonym of the word, since it means easy to hear.

27. b. **steady.** Fluctuate means to change, so steady would not be a synonym of the word, since it means unchanging.

28. e. **endure.** Agonize means to struggle, so endure would not be a synonym of the word, since it means to bear, or to accept.

29. c. **actual.** Nominal means supposed, so actual would not be a synonym of the word, since it means real.

30. b. **joy.** Pathos means sadness, so joy would not be a synonym of the word, since it means delight.

### Antonyms

31. **belligerent.** Belligerent means aggressive, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

32. **loquacious.** Loquacious means talkative, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

33. **fidelity.** Fidelity means loyalty, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

34. **rejected.** Rejected means not wanted, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

35. **sophisticated.** Sophisticated means urbane, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

36. **tenacious.** Tenacious means stubborn, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

37. **verify.** Verify means to prove, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

38. **incognito.** Incognito means in disguise, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

39. **vivacious.** Vivacious means energetic, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

40. **protracted.** Protracted means long, drawn-out, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

### Matching Questions

41. c
42. g
43. j
44. i
45. a
46. h
47. e
48. f
49. d
50. b
VOCABULARY LIST 3: LEARNING ROOTS

Across
3 verify
5 inducement
9 audible
10 incognito
13 genocide
14 normal
17 sophisticated
18 fluctuate
19 chronic
20 protracted

Down
1 tenacious
2 rejected
4 antagonize
6 interrogate
7 loquacious
8 demographic
11 belligerent
12 pathos
15 fidelity
16 vivacious

Across:
3 verify
5 inducement
9 audible
10 incognito
13 genocide
14 normal
17 sophisticated
18 fluctuate
19 chronic
20 protracted

Down:
1 tenacious
2 rejected
4 antagonize
6 interrogate
7 loquacious
8 demographic
11 belligerent
12 pathos
15 fidelity
16 vivacious
For example, in this chapter, you will be introduced to the root *phobe*, which means fear. You can then guess that any word that contains this root has to do with the fear of something. For instance, *claus-trophobia* means an abnormal fear of small spaces.

**CHAPTER SUMMARY**

Just as many people in our culture have their roots in other countries, roots of English words, too, come from other languages. The words of the English language have been borrowed from other languages over the course of history. The history of a word is called its etymology. Many of the roots in Chapter 6 come from Greek and Latin languages. We have included 20 more words with important roots in this chapter because the more roots and origins you are familiar with, the more you will be able to recognize related words.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 4: More Roots**

agoraphobic
assimilate
attribute
benevolent
biodegradable
conspicuous
contradiction
credence
evident
gregarious
impediment
incisive
inference
mediocre
philanthropy
precedent
recapitulate
remittance
tangential
urbane

**Across**
1. average
6. able to be broken down by living things
8. payment
9. to credit
10. relating to
13. hindrance
14. easily noticed
17. social

**Down**
2. summarize
2. goodwill towards men
4. denial
5. fear of open or public spaces
6. bighearted, good
7. to fit in
11. obvious
12. deduction
13. clear cut
14. belief
15. preceding
16. suave
goraphobic (ərəˈfȯ-bik)
root: phobe means fear
(adj.)
fear of open or public spaces
My neighbor is ________, so I do his grocery shopping for him.

assimilate (əˈsim-ə-lât)
root: simul means copy
(verb)
to fit in
It is very difficult to ________ to another culture as an adult.

attribute (ˈat-tri-bût)
root: trib means give
(noun)
a special quality
(verb) (ə-tri-bˈüt)
to credit
I ________ much of my success to my education.

benevolent (ba-ˈnev-ə-lent)
root: ben means good
(adj.)
kind, having goodwill
The ________ counselor always seemed to understand her student’s problems.

biodegradable (bî-ˈō-dē-ˈgräd-ə-bal)
root: bio means life
(adj.)
able to be broken down by living things
Ella is a staunch environmentalist, so she buys only ________ products.

conspicuous (kənˈspik-ə-əs)
root: spic, spec mean see
(adj.)
highly visible
Nikolai’s ________ Halloween costume made it hard not to notice him.

contradiction (kən-trəˈdik-shən)
root: contra means against, dict means say
(noun)
the act or state of disagreeing
My teacher made a direct ________ to her earlier instructions by allowing us to turn in a handwritten report.

credence (ˈkred-əns)
root: cred means believe
(noun)
belief, believability
Marty gave ________ to the gossip because it came from a reliable source.

evident (ˈev-ə-dent)
root: vid means see
(adj.)
obvious
The effects of the drought will be ________ to anyone who comes to visit the area.

gregarious (gri-ˈgair-əs)
root: greg means crowd
(adj.)
sociable
People want to be around Eva because of her ________ nature.

impediment (im-ˈped-ə-mânt)
root: ped, pod means foot, ped means child
(noun)
a barrier or hindrance
I had to work with a therapist to overcome my speech ________.

incisive (in-ˈsî-siv)
root: cis, cid mean to cut
(adj.)
penetrating, clear cut
Journalistic writing should be ________ and factual.
Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 4 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

Scientists at New York Aquarium in Brooklyn have discovered that bottle-nosed dolphins may have self-awareness. They attribute this belief to the result of experiments by Dr. Diane Reiss at the Osborn Lab of Marine Science. She and her team gave further credence to this notion by marking dolphins’ noses with an x and an o. Sometimes the mark was done with just water, sometimes with colored waterproof dye. Each time a dolphin was marked, it would check itself in the mirror. If it had a conspicuous colored mark, it would swim to the side of the pool and try to rub it off. As a result of these experiments, scientists made an inference that because these dolphins recognized their image in a mirror, they were self-aware. Before these experiments,
gorillas had set the precedent of being the only mammals other than humans who could recognize their images.

**Sentence Completion**

Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 4 into the following sentences.

1. Reaching heights of 310 feet, the Millennium Force roller coaster is the most ____________ ride at the Cedar Point Amusement Park.

2. In only one generation, the immigrant family was able to ____________ to its new surroundings.

3. Recent ocean-floor discoveries have made it ____________ that the huge part of our planet hidden underwater still holds surprises that are waiting to be uncovered.

4. Some pest control companies guarantee that their ____________ products will not leave any traces in either air or soil.

5. The ____________ couple founded Out of Africa rehabilitation and learning center for abandoned or injured wild cats.

6. In order to become more ____________, the shy young woman enrolled in a public speaking course.

7. The largest ____________ to advancing in society is a lack of education.

8. Despite recent attacks, it is no ____________ that humans are much more dangerous to sharks than sharks are to humans.

9. In order for the brain to function at an optimum, rather than a ____________ level, it needs proper nutrition, sleep, oxygen, caring, and laughter.

10. Lance Armstrong’s recovery from cancer and comeback as world-champion cyclist gives ____________ to his positive attitude and perseverance.

11. As a result of the administration’s tax rebate policy, most U.S. taxpayers received a ____________ of $300–$600.

12. The multimillion dollar cultural arts center was built due to the ____________ of wealthy patrons.

13. Scientists made ____________ predictions about the damage from Europe’s most active volcano, Mount Etna in Sicily.

14. In her warm and funny short stories, Eudora Welty preferred to talk about simple, humble characters rather than ____________, high-society people.

15. Her local association was ____________ to the worldwide environmental organization.

16. The writer ____________ from his publisher’s e-mail that his book was approved for publishing.

17. The elderly woman became increasingly ____________ and refused to leave her apartment.

18. He used the first chapter of his novel to ____________ the historical background of the special air force unit in WWII.
19. Research has shown that as adults, even twins who are separated at birth have similar _____________.

20. Before Sandra Day O’Connor’s appointment, there was no ______________ set for a federally appointed female Supreme Court Justice.

Synonyms
The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. benevolent
   a. compassionate
   b. caring
   c. malevolent
   d. kind
   e. generous

22. recapitulate
   a. repeat
   b. summarize
   c. reiterate
   d. decimate
   e. review

23. urbane
   a. sophisticated
   b. advanced
   c. complicated
   d. polished
   e. puerile

24. conspicuous
   a. cryptic
   b. evident
   c. visible
   d. prominent
   e. noticeable

25. incisive
   a. keen
   b. insightful
   c. unclear
   d. intuitive
   e. penetrating

26. gregarious
   a. sociable
   b. companionable
   c. outgoing
   d. extroverted
   e. shy

27. assimilate
   a. incorporate
   b. reject
   c. absorb
   d. digest
   e. understand

28. impediment
   a. hindrance
   b. obstacle
   c. obstruction
   d. aid
   e. barrier
29. inference  
   a. deduction  
   b. assumption  
   c. obsolescence  
   d. suggestion  
   e. supposition  

30. credence  
   a. authority  
   b. unbelievable  
   c. credibility  
   d. belief  
   e. acceptance  

**Antonyms**

Choose the word from Vocabulary List 4 that means the opposite, or most nearly the opposite, of the following groups of words.

31. aid, assistance, support, backing

32. bill, cost, charge

33. central, vital, innermost, crucial

34. nastiness, greed, selfishness, gluttony

35. unsophisticated, simple, crude, unrefined

36. disbelief, incredulity, doubt, mistrust

37. agreement, consensus, accord, harmony

38. hidden, obscure, cryptic, concealed

39. outstanding, exceptional, superior, first-rate

40. unclear, murky, indistinct, doubtful

---

**Choosing the Right Word**

Circle the word in bold that best completes the sentence.

41. Because she was fearful of wide-open spaces, she was diagnosed as being (agoraphobic, gregarious).

42. During the scavenger hunt, the easily seen clue was left under a (conspicuous, incisive) rock.

43. The quickly dissolving fertilizer was (mediocre, biodegradable).

44. (Benevolent, urbane) Peace Corps volunteers selflessly devote their time to help others in need.

45. In order to receive high marks, Olympic ice skaters’ performances cannot be (conspicuous, mediocre).

46. His blindness did not stop him from becoming a Grammy winner, nor was it an (impediment, precedent) to him becoming a singing sensation.

47. In the Preamble of the Constitution, it clearly states, “We hold these truths to be self (evident, benevolent) that all men are created equal.”

48. To sum up the important events, the producer had the narrator (attribute, recapitulate) those events at the movie’s finale.
49. It’s always a good idea to send your (inference, remittance) to the phone company immediately after you receive your bill.

50. Because of their clarity and logic, no one questioned the (incisive, mediocre) orders of the captain.

Practice Activities
The following is a list of words that contain the same roots as the words in this chapter. See if you can determine the word meanings. Check your definitions with the dictionary definitions.

xenophobia, facsimile, contribution, beneficiary, bionic, introspection, dictate, credulous, video, egregious, pedestrian, precise, interfere, media, bibliophile, intercede, commission, contiguous, suburban

Select any five words from the list and create your own sentences.
Words in Context
After reading the paragraph, we learn that scientists have made a discovery about bottle-nosed dolphins. Because of their experiments using mirrors, they believe that the dolphins can recognize themselves in a reflection. Therefore, they credit these experiments with proving this to be true. We can deduce that attribute means giving credit to the results that support this finding. The next word we see is credence. Further experiments of placing marks on the noses of these dolphins cause them to seek out their reflection to check their noses for marks that they try to wipe off. We can presume that credence means it makes these findings more believable. Because the dolphins tried to rub off conspicuous colored marks on their noses, we can imply that conspicuous marks were highly visible. Because of the results of these experiments, the scientists inferred that dolphins could recognize their own images. We can tell that the inference was their conclusion. The last vocabulary word we see is precedent. Since there have been no other examples of mammals being aware of their own image, other than gorillas setting a precedent, we can infer that the discovery of gorillas’ self-awareness came before the dolphin discovery.

Sentence Completion
1. conspicuous. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. assimilate. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. evident. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. biodegradable. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. benevolent. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. gregarious. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. impediment. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. contradiction. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. mediocre. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. credence. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. remittance. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
12. philanthropy. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
13. incisive. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. urbane. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. tangential. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. inferred. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
17. agoraphobic. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
18. recapitulate. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
19. attributes. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
20. precedent. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

Synonyms
21. c. malevolent. Benevolent means giving and kind, so malevolent would not be a synonym of the word since it means evil.
22. d. decimate. Recapitulate means to recap, so decimate would not be a synonym of the word since it means destroy.
23. e. puerile. Urbane means refined, so puerile would not be a synonym of the word because it means childish.
24. **a. cryptic.** Conspicuous means obvious, so cryptic would not be a synonym of the word because it means hidden.

25. **c. unclear.** Incisive means perceptive, so unclear would not be the synonym of the word because it means wishy-washy.

26. **e. shy.** Gregarious means outgoing, so shy would not be a synonym of the word.

27. **b. reject.** Assimilate means to take in, so reject would not be a synonym of the word because it means to discard or throw out.

28. **d. aid.** Impediment means an obstacle, so aid would not be a synonym of the word because it means to help.

29. **c. obsolescence.** Inference means a presumption, so obsolescence would not be a synonym of the word because it means outdated.

30. **b. unbelievable.** Credence means belief or trust, so unbelievable would not be a synonym since it means the opposite of the rest of the words in the list.

**Antonyms**

31. **impediment.** Impediment means hindrance, the opposite meaning of the words in the group.

32. **remittance.** Remittance means payment, opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

33. **tangential.** Tangential means secondary or unimportant, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

34. **philanthropy.** Philanthropy means generosity, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

35. **urbane.** Urbane means sophisticated and cultured, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

36. **credence.** Credence means belief, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

37. **contradiction.** Contradiction means disagreement, the opposite of the words in the group.

38. **conspicuous.** Conspicuous means noticeable, the opposite of the words in the groups.

39. **mediocre.** Mediocre means commonplace, the opposite of the words in the group.

40. **evident.** Evident means obvious, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

**Choosing the Right Word**

41. **agoraphobic.** Context clue is that she was fearful of wide-open spaces.

42. **conspicuous.** Context clue is the easily seen clue.

43. **biodegradable.** Context clue is quickly dissolving fertilizer.

44. **benevolent.** Context clue is volunteers selflessly devote their time.

45. **mediocre.** Context clue is that Olympic skaters cannot receive high marks.

46. **impediment.** Context clue is the man’s blindness did not stop him from becoming a Grammy winner.

47. **evident.** Context clue is the Constitution clearly states.

48. **recapitulate.** Context clue is that the important events were summarized.

49. **remittance.** Context clue is that the customers found the remittance to be too costly.

50. **incisive.** Context clue is that the captain’s orders had clarity and logic.
**Across**
1 mediocre
6 biodegradable
8 remittance
9 attribute
10 tangential
13 impediment
14 conspicuous
17 gregarious

**Down**
2 recapitulate
3 philanthropy
4 contradiction
5 agoraphobic
6 benevolent
7 assimilate
11 evident
12 inference
13 incisive
14 credence
15 precedent
16 urbane
In this chapter, you will practice using these “foreign” words and learn the meaning and spelling of each one by completing the exercises. You may recognize many of these words when you hear them, but they may appear foreign to you when you see them written. This is because the pronunciation of each word follows the rules of the original language it is from and not necessarily traditional English pronunciation. Practice saying each word out loud as you read through the list.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 5: Foreign Language Terms Used in English**

aficionado  
avant-garde  
blasé  
bourgeois  
cliché  
debut  
élan  
entrepreneur  
epitome  
fait-accompli  
gauche  
imbroglio  
ingénue  
laissez-faire  
naïve  
non sequitur  
rendezvous  
vendetta  
vignette

**Across**

4 a complicated or embarrassing situation  
7 animation, spirit, life  
9 a naïve young woman  
11 unsophisticated and gullible  
12 a short, descriptive piece of writing  
14 grudge, feud  
17 something finished and irreversible  
18 quintessence  
19 vague feeling of illness  
20 first appearance

**Down**

1 an overly familiar, overused phrase  
2 middle class  
3 apathetic, uninterested  
5 bumbling, crude  
6 hands-off  
8 a statement that has no connection to the previous statement or idea  
13 someone who takes on a new business challenge or risk  
15 a buff or devotee  
16 to meet at an appointed place and time
**aficionado** (ə-fi-shē-ˈnā-dō)  
(noun)  
a person who likes, knows about, and is devoted to a particular activity or thing  
Jonelle has been a baseball _______ ever since she went to her first game with her dad.

**avant-garde** (ˈa-vänt-ˈɡärд)  
(noun)  
a group of people who develop innovative and experimental concepts, especially in the arts  
(adj.)  
relating to a group of people who develop innovative and experimental concepts, especially in the arts  
As part of the ________, Abe’s paintings have always been on the cutting edge.  
Ted’s art has become increasingly ________; he now is building sculptures in his loft in Brooklyn.

**blasé** (blā-ˈzā)  
(adj.)  
apathetic to pleasure or excitement as a result of excessive indulgence in something  
Because Jon works in the music industry, going to concerts has become ________, as they are no longer a novelty.

**bourgeois** (ˈbūrzh-wā)  
(adj.)  
having the attributes and beliefs of the middle class, marked by materialistic concerns  
Pete has never succumbed to _________ values—he is comfortable living a simple life.

**cliché** (klē-ˈshā)  
(noun)  
a phrase or saying which has been overused and, as a result, has little significance or meaning  
Try to avoid using _________ in your writing, as they are not as powerful as vivid, fresh language.

**debut** (ˈdā-byū)  
(noun)  
a first appearance  
The tennis player was nervous about her ________ as a professional.

**élan** (ā-lān)  
(noun)  
spirit, enthusiasm, or excitement  
The medical resident showed great ________ for medicine; she was always prepared and asked a lot of questions.

**entrepreneur** (ən-ˈtrə-prə-ˈnər)  
(noun)  
a person who takes on the challenge and risk of starting his or her own business  
Being a(n) ________ is nerve-wracking because you can never be certain that your idea will be a hit.

**epitome** (i-ˈpi-tə-mē)  
(noun)  
an exact example of something; someone or something that embodies the essence of a concept or type  
He is the ________ of a scientist with his wire-rimmed glasses and absent-minded attitude.
fait-accompli (ˈfā-tə-kāmˈplē) (noun)
something that is complete and seemingly irreversible
When she signed the one-year lease for her new apartment, it was a ________.

gaque (ˈgōsh) (adj.)
lacking social graces or sophistication
The teenager felt ________ in the company of a more sophisticated crowd.

imbroglio (imˈbrō-līo) (noun)
a complicated or embarrassing situation due to a misunderstanding
When David thought that Sally was my girlfriend instead of my sister, it created an ________ until I cleared up the misunderstanding.

ingénue (ˈan-jō-nű) (noun)
a young girl or woman, an actress playing such a role
She was an ________; she was young and innocent.

laissez-faire (leˈsā-far) (noun)
a doctrine opposing government control of economic matters except in the case of maintaining peace and the concept of property
He believed in a ________ policy because he thought that the government should not interfere with economic matters.

malaise (məˈlāz) (noun)
the vague feeling of illness
She went to the doctor because she felt a general ________ and thought she was coming down with something.

naïve (näˈēv) (adj.)
innocent, simple, lacking knowledge of the world
I told him he was ________ to think that his landlord would offer to fix his sink without a written or verbal request.

non sequitur (ˈnänˈse-kwə-tər) (noun)
a statement that has no connection to the previous statement or idea
My grandmother made such a ________ yesterday. She was telling me about her wedding and then in the next breath said her car needed to be fixed.

rendezvous (ˈrän-də-və) (noun)
a meeting place (verb)
to meet at a meeting place
They decided the school would be their ________, and then they would go to the park.

vendetta (venˈde-tə) (noun)
a grudge or feud characterized by acts of retaliation
He had a ________ against the man who killed his father and vowed he would seek revenge.

vignette (vinˈyet) (noun)
a short descriptive written piece
The teacher asked the class to write a ________ about their home so they could practice writing short but clear descriptive pieces.
Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 5 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

At the party, I watched as a young man introduced himself as an entrepreneur to a naïve young woman, and then continued to brag about the business he recently opened. The young woman was so innocent that she didn’t even realize that the man was flirting with her. For her sake, I joined the conversation rather abruptly by making a political comment about our government’s laissez-faire policy regarding economic regulation. I explained that it was ridiculous that our government did not see itself as responsible for regulating economic relations in our country because many low-income people suffered as a result. The young entrepreneur seemed confused at first by my apparent non sequitur because it had absolutely nothing to do with his previous statement regarding his business. Yet he did not want to appear gauche in front of the young woman so he smiled and politely asked me to explain my view on laissez-faire policies. At that point, the young woman excused herself and said that she was feeling a slight malaise and thought she should go home to rest. The young entrepreneur quickly suggested that they rendezvous at the park the following day, but the young woman politely declined.

Sentence Completion
Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 5 into the following sentences.

1. After taking care of my brother, who had been sick with the flu, I started getting a feeling of _____________ and assumed I was getting sick, too.

2. In my favorite movie, the main character, Ray, has a _____________ against the mob boss who bankrupted his father.

3. The college graduate was too _____________ to realize that his boss wouldn’t give him a vacation unless he asked for it.

4. The prospective college freshman was so nervous during her interview that she answered her first question with a _____________; it was irrelevant to what the admissions officer had asked.

5. We arranged that if we got lost, we would _____________ in the lobby of the hotel.

6. On the first day of class, he wrote a _____________ about his house to practice his descriptive writing.

7. The young actress hated playing a(n) _____________, but she always got those parts because she was young and attractive.

8. She went to dinner with some friends at a very fancy restaurant and felt _____________ because she didn’t know which fork to use for her salad.
9. My dad always speaks in ________________ when he gives me advice. For example, the other day, he told me not to count my chickens before they hatch.

10. My mother is a car ________________; she knows everything there is to know about cars and loves to test drive different models.

11. Her art teacher said her sculpture was ________________ because she used both metal and plastic in a way he had never seen done before.

12. When Kathy asked Sylvia if she wanted to go to the World Series with her, she was surprised that Sylvia was ________________ about it, but Sylvia explained that she had been to the World Series five years in a row, and it was starting to get boring.

13. The young musician showed such ________________ when he played the guitar; he played very difficult pieces without missing a note and seemed to enjoy himself immensely.

14. The ________________ was very proud when he opened the doors of his new pet supply store on the first day of business.

15. She had just graduated from law school, but she already looked like the ________________ of a lawyer with her expression, briefcase and no-nonsense professional suit.

16. The politician argued against the ________________ policy because she felt that if economic matters were not regulated in the country, large companies would take advantage of consumers.

17. The plot of many TV sitcoms seems to revolve around a(n) ________________; there is some big misunderstanding, which results in an embarrassing situation, but it is usually resolved by the end of the show.

18. When she graduated from high school, it was a ________________; she had completed all of the requirements.

19. At the ballet, the young dancer made her ________________ in the second act.

20. Most advertisements seem to include ________________ values because middle class people are able to buy the items being advertised.

Synonyms
The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word is bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. blasé
   a. bored
   b. enthusiastic
   c. apathetic
   d. neutral

22. avant-garde
   a. creative
   b. cutting edge
   c. conventional
   d. innovative

23. naïve
   a. innocent
   b. simple
   c. knowledgeable
   d. trusting
24. élan
   a. disinterest
   b. excitement
   c. spirit
   d. enthusiasm

27. vendetta
   a. grudge
   b. feud
   c. fight
   d. truce

25. aficionado
   a. fan
   b. novice
   c. devotee
   d. expert

28. vignette
   a. novel
   b. short piece
   c. description
   d. literary piece

26. non sequitur
   a. unrelated
   b. disconnected
   c. clear line of thought
   d. disjointed

29. cliché
   a. truism
   b. commonplace
   c. original statement
   d. familiar

30. malaise
   a. sickness
   b. illness
   c. healthy
   d. unwell

**Antonyms**

Choose the word from Vocabulary List 5 that means the opposite, or most nearly the opposite, of the following groups of words.

31. sophisticated, graceful, classy, worldly —

32. wise, mature, complicated, sophisticated —

33. poor, not materialistic, working class —

34. incomplete, reversible, disputable —

35. old, wise, masculine —

36. boredom, disinterest, despondent —

37. clear, comfortable, easily understand situation —
VOCABULARY LIST 5: FOREIGN LANGUAGE TERMS USED IN ENGLISH

38. excitement, enthusiasm, wide-eyed, naïve

39. friendship, peaceful relationship, reconciliation

40. retirement, seclusion, final appearance

Matching Questions
Match the word in the first column with the corresponding word in the second column.

41. debut a. a young girl
42. aficionado b. lacking social graces
43. avant-garde c. a meeting place
44. élan d. apathetic
45. gauche e. spirit
46. naïve f. a complicated misunderstanding
47. vendetta g. a statement that does not relate to the previous statement
48. vignette h. a completed fact
49. cliché i. a feeling of sickness
50. malaise j. an overused statement
51. entrepreneur k. a short descriptive piece
52. epitome l. a feud characterized by acts of retaliation
53. fait-accompli m. a fan or devotee
54. rendezvous n. artistically innovative
55. ingénue o. having middle-class values
56. laissez-faire p. first appearance
57. imbroglio q. one who starts his/her own business
58. bourgeois r. an example or the embodiment of something
59. non sequitur s. a political doctrine, which supports government deregulation of economic matters
60. blasé t. innocent, simple

Practice Activities
Many or the words from this chapter are used in articles about art, politics, and history. Read a newspaper or magazine article about art or architecture, and an article about contemporary or historical politics, and write down all of the foreign words you come across. How do you know if a word is a foreign word? How is it being used in the article? Add these words to your vocabulary list and look up the definition.

Now that you know these words, make a note when and where you see them. Think about the following questions: When do people use these words? What effect does it have on the piece of writing you are reading? Why have these particular words become such a regular part of our vocabulary?
Answers

Words in Context
In the first sentence, we learn that the young man is an entrepreneur and that he is talking about a business he started, so we can conclude that being an entrepreneur has something to do with starting one’s own business. The young woman is described as naïve and then in the next sentence described as very innocent. The narrator also explains that she enters this conversation “for her sake” so we can conclude that naïve means young and innocent and possibly in need of help. The next word we encounter is laissez-faire, which is used to describe our government’s economic policy, so we know that it refers to something political and relates to economics. In the next sentence, it becomes clearer that the narrator is using the word to mean that our government is not regulating economic matters. Non sequitur is used to refer to the narrator’s comment and the fact that it is completely unrelated to the entrepreneur’s previous statement, so we can deduce that non sequitur means an unrelated statement. The entrepreneur does not want to appear gauche, so he is polite even though he is confused by the comment. We can conclude that gauche must mean impolite or lacking social graces. We can deduce that malaise must mean feeling ill or tired because the young woman needs to go home and rest. Finally, the entrepreneur asks the young woman to “rendezvous at the park the next day,” so we can conclude that rendezvous must mean meet.

Sentence Completion
1. malaise. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. vendetta. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. naïve. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. non sequitur. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. rendezvous. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. vignette. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. ingénue. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. gauche. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. clichés. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. aficionado. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. avant-garde. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
12. blasé. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
13. élan. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. entrepreneur. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. epitome. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. laissez-faire. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
17. imbroglio. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
18. fait-accompli. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
19. début. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
20. bourgeois. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

Synonyms
21. b. enthusiastic. Blasé means apathetic about something due to over indulgence. Enthusiastic would not be a synonym because it means to be excited about something.
22. c. conventional. Avant-garde means original and creative, so conventional is not a synonym because it means lacking originality.
23. c. knowledgeable. Naïve means simple and innocent, so knowledgeable is not a synonym because it means having knowledge.

24. a. disinterest. Élan means spirit or enthusiasm so disinterest is not a synonym because it means lacking interest.

25. b. novice. An aficionado is an expert or devotee to something. A novice is someone who is new to something, so it is not a synonym.

26. c. clear line of thought. A non sequitur is a statement that is not connected to the previous statement. A clear line of thought refers to several statements that follow each other, so it is not a synonym.

27. d. truce. A vendetta is grudge or feud characterized by acts of retaliation. A truce is not a synonym because it means to settle or end a fight or disagreement.

28. a. novel. A vignette is a short descriptive piece, but a novel is a long written story, so it is not a synonym.

29. c. original statement. A cliché is a statement or saying that has been so overused that it lacks meaning. An original statement is not a synonym because it means a statement that is new and has not been used before.

30. c. healthy. Malaise means a feeling of sickness, but healthy means to feel well, so it is not a synonym.

Antonyms

31. gauche. Gauche means lacking social grace or sophistication, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

32. naïve. Naïve means simple and innocent, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

33. bourgeois. Bourgeois means characteristics of the middle class and materialistic, the opposite of the words in the group.

34. fait-accompli. Fait accompli means a completed fact that is irreversible, the opposite of the words in the group.

35. ingénue. An ingénue is a young naïve girl, the opposite of the words in the group.

36. élan. Élan means spirit, enthusiasm, the opposite of the words in the list.

37. imbroglio. An imbroglio is a complicated situation or an embarrassing misunderstanding, the opposite of the words listed.

38. blasé. Blasé means apathetic due to over indulgence in something, the opposite of the words listed.

39. vendetta. Vendetta means a feud or grudge characterized by retaliation.

40. début. Debut means first appearance, usually relating to one’s entrance into society, the opposite of the words in the list.

Matching Questions

41. p
42. m
43. n
44. e
45. b
46. t
47. l
48. k
49. j
50. i
51. q
52. r
53. h
54. c
55. a
56. s
57. f
58. o
59. g
60. d
**Across**
4 imbroglio
7 élan
9 ingénue
11 naïve
12 vignette
14 vendetta
17 fait-accompli
18 epitome
19 malaise
20 debut

**Down**
1 cliché
2 bourgeois
3 blasé
5 gauche
6 avant-garde
8 laissez-faire
10 nonsequitur
13 entrepreneur
15 aficionado
16 rendezvous
Vocabulary List 6: Business Terms

CHAPTER SUMMARY
In this chapter, you will learn words frequently used in business. Many of the words in this chapter may be familiar to you, but it is important to become comfortable using these words in your day-to-day life. You will see these words in articles about business and economic matters, as well as in the written policies and procedures found in most work environments. You may also see some of the words on your tax return and other work-related forms. Think about when and where you have seen these words before and how they were used. Once you know these words, you will find that many business-related articles and policies that you encounter at work or in your day-to-day life are easier to understand. As you go through the list, say each word aloud to yourself and practice spelling it. This will help you to become more comfortable using each word. Think about other words you know that may have similar prefixes, suffixes, or roots and see if you can use this knowledge to help you remember the meaning of the new words found in this chapter.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 6: Business Terms**

- arbitrage
- arbitration
- beneficiary
- capital
- collusion
- consortium
- deduction
- discrimination
- entitlement
- equity
- exempt
- fiscal
- franchise
- harassment
- jargon
- nepotism
- perquisite
- prospectus
- subsidy
- tenure

**Across**

4. someone who benefits from something
5. annoy or irritate persistently
6. a joining of two or more businesses for a specific purpose
8. conspiracy
11. special privilege or benefit
15. the process by which disputes are settled by a third party
16. accumulated wealth
17. fairness of treatment
18. the state or period of holding a particular position, or a guarantee of employment to teachers who have particular standards
19. a grant

**Down**

1. prejudiced actions or treatment
2. favoring relatives
3. terminology
7. a business that is owned by a parent company but run by independent operators under rules set by the parent company
9. the subtraction of a cost from income
10. buying stocks, bonds, and securities to resell for a quick profit
12. bonus
13. a published report of a business and its plans
14. pertaining to money
17. excused
arbitrage (ˈärb-ə-träzh) (noun)
the buying of “paper”—stocks, bonds, and securities—to resell for a quick profit __________, the buying of bonds and other securities to sell at a higher price, is a risky business.

arbitration (är-bə-trä-shən) (noun)
the process by which disputes are settled by a third party
They decided to resolve the matter through __________; that is, they gave the decision-making power to an independent person.

beneficiary (ben-nə-fi-shë-er-ē) (noun)
one who will benefit from something
He is the sole __________ of her estate. He will be given all the property when the old woman dies.

capital (ˈka-pə-təl) (noun)
accumulated wealth, used to gain more wealth
She put some money in the bank and would only spend the interest she earned on the initial investment or __________.

collusion (kə-lü-zhen) (noun)
a secret agreement for a deceitful or fraudulent purpose, conspiracy
At the poker game, Sarah and Tom made a __________ to cheat together so Sarah would win the game and then they could share the winnings.

consortium (kən-sor-shē-əm) (noun)
a joining of two or more businesses for a specific purpose
The joining of the three companies into one made for a powerful __________ that would dominate the industry.

deduction (diˈdak-shən) (noun)
the subtraction of a cost from income
He took his children as a tax __________ so that he could subtract the cost of their care from his taxes.

discrimination (dis-kri-mə-nä-shən) (noun)
the act of making distinctions, the act of distinguishing between one group of people and another and treating people differently as a result, prejudiced actions or treatment
Many workers still face __________ in workplaces that choose not to hire or promote employees based on their sex, skin color, or ethnic background.

entitlement (inˈtəl-mənt) (noun)
special privilege or benefit allowed to a group of people
In our society, the elderly have an __________ to healthcare and money for food and shelter.

equity (ˈekwə-tē) (noun)
fairness or evenness of treatment, or the value of property after all claims have been made against it
Though she was accused of being unfair in her demands, she claimed she only wanted __________ in what was owed her.

exempt (igˈzem(p)ət) (adj.)
excused from some rule or job
She was __________ from duty that day; she was excused because she had been injured.
fiscal (ˈfis-kəl)
(adj.)
pertaining to money or finance
At the end of a company's __________, or financial, year, the company usually announces the amount it earned in that year.

franchise (ˈfran-chiz)
(noun)
a business that is owned by a parent company but run by independent operators under rules set by the parent company
McDonald’s is a __________ because it is independently owned, but it still operates under rules set out by the parent company.

harassment (həˈras-mənt)
(noun)
the act of irritating or annoying persistently; sexual harassment
unwelcome physical or verbal conduct directed at an employee because of his or her sex
There are many laws today that protect workers from sexual __________ by their employer.

jargon (ˈjärgən)
(noun)
the specialized vocabulary of an industry or interest group
Learning the __________, or language, of a particular interest or job is an important part of learning about the workplace.

nepotism (ˈne-pə-ti-zəm)
(noun)
the employment or promotion of friends and family members
Many public employment arenas have been accused of __________, because workers related to persons in authority are given preference in hiring.

perquisite (ˈpər-kwə-zet)
(noun)
a privilege or bonus given in addition to regular salary
Many companies give stock options as a __________ in addition to an employee's salary.

prospectus (prəˈspek-təs)
(noun)
a published report of a business and its plans for a program or offering
The company published a __________ to offer details of its plan for expansion. This plan offers potential investors pertinent information about the plan and the company.

subsidy (ˈsəb-sə-dē)
(noun)
a grant of money for a particular purpose
The state gave several school districts a __________ to rebuild the schools in those districts.

tenure (ˈten-ər)
(noun)
the state or period of holding a particular position, or a guarantee of employment to teachers who have met particular standards
Even faculty with __________ at colleges and universities are losing the security promised by their guarantee of permanent employment.

Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 6 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

When she took the job as the manager of a Wendy’s franchise, Sarah quickly learned many things about the business world.
On her first day of work, she read the discrimination policy that stated that Wendy’s does not discriminate against race, ethnicity, gender, sexual preference, or people with disabilities when hiring employees. Then she read Wendy’s policy on sexual harassment and was glad to see that they were very strict about creating a comfortable working environment for all of the employees. Her boss explained that flirting of any kind was not tolerated at work. Next she was asked to fill out many forms, including a life insurance policy. She had to pick someone to be the beneficiary on the policy in the event of her death, so she picked her son, Michael. After she was done with all of the paperwork, Sarah followed her boss into the back room and he showed her the various systems they used and began to teach her the jargon used in the fast food industry. It was important to understand these terms because many vendors and members of the Wendy’s company use this shorthand language. Sarah mentioned that her sister really wanted to work at Wendy’s as well, but her boss cautioned her against committing an act of nepotism. He explained that it was important that every potential employee had a fair chance of employment and that, as store manager, it was her responsibility to ensure that she did not give preferential treatment to her family members. At the end of the meeting, her boss told her that as a perquisite in addition to her salary, she and her family were allowed one free meal a week at Wendy’s.

**Sentence Completion**

Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 6 into the following sentences.

1. Beware of those two; they are always in _____________ with each other to sell defective products at a hefty sum.

2. They decided to settle the dispute through _____________ because they couldn’t agree on anything amongst themselves.

3. I would love to start my own magazine, but I don’t know where I am going to get the _____________ to fund it.

4. When employees refer to their company’s _____________ year, they are talking about the 12-month period that the organization plans to use its funds.

5. To really understand the publishing industry, you need to become familiar with its _____________

6. I was thinking of opening a _____________ of my favorite ice cream store, but the parent company’s rules and regulations are too strict.

7. I was _____________ from taking Spanish 101 in college because I placed out of it with an exam that I took in high school.

8. The _____________ of this job are not too great; you have to work here four years before they give you a third week of vacation.

9. Even though he is not a good teacher, he will never be fired because he has _____________.
10. Now that I own a home, I can take many ____________ on my taxes, which means I get to keep more of my income.

11. Before I bought my apartment, I read everything about the building in its ____________.

12. Because she was wrongfully accused of ____________, she didn’t lose her job.

13. My daughter is the only ____________ to my life insurance policy.

14. This company is guilty of ____________; only the president’s immediate family holds a supervisory role.

15. The three companies joined together to form a ____________, making their presence in the industry even stronger.

16. There is much debate about what to do with Social Security, a(n) ____________ that many people depend on upon retirement.

17. As a child, my favorite game was “Monopoly,” so it is no surprise that I ended up working in ____________.

18. One thing I can say about the management here is that they treat all employees with ____________, which makes it a very pleasant place to work.

19. The development company depleted the ____________ that the city had donated to build a new park, so construction has halted.

20. I can’t prove it, but I think I have been a victim of ____________; I am almost sure I was let go because I am a woman.

21. deduction
   a. subtraction
   b. to take away
   c. addition
   d. the cost of children on your tax forms

22. perquisite
   a. privilege
   b. bonus
   c. reward
   d. punishment

23. tenure
   a. termination of employment
   b. guarantee of employment
   c. length of employment
   d. period of employment

24. exempt
   a. excused
   b. forced
   c. pardoned
   d. set apart

**Synonyms**
The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. deduction
   a. subtraction
   b. to take away
   c. addition
   d. the cost of children on your tax forms

22. perquisite
   a. privilege
   b. bonus
   c. reward
   d. punishment

23. tenure
   a. termination of employment
   b. guarantee of employment
   c. length of employment
   d. period of employment

24. exempt
   a. excused
   b. forced
   c. pardoned
   d. set apart
### Antonyms
Choose the word that means the opposite, or most nearly the opposite, of the following groups of words.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31. addition, income, give</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. favoritism, prejudiced, unfair, unjust</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. punishment, harm, disadvantage, penalty</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. debt, poverty, insufficient resources</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. forced, duty-bound, liable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36. fairness, unprejudiced, equity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37. friendly, unthreatening, not provocative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38. unemployed, fired, lack of job security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39. separation, liquidation, singular company</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. slang, proper English, clichés</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Matching Questions

Match the word in the first column with the corresponding word in the second column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>41. beneficiary</th>
<th>a. privilege in addition to salary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>42. deduction</td>
<td>b. grant of money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43. arbitrage</td>
<td>c. period of holding a job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44. fiscal</td>
<td>d. published report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45. jargon</td>
<td>e. pertaining to money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46. exempt</td>
<td>f. fairness or evenness of treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. franchise</td>
<td>g. the buying of stocks to resell for profit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. consortium</td>
<td>h. one who benefits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49. discrimination</td>
<td>i. special privilege enjoyed by a group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50. equity</td>
<td>j. accumulated wealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51. tenure</td>
<td>k. the employment of friends or family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52. arbitration</td>
<td>l. terms specific to an industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53. perquisite</td>
<td>m. the subtraction of cost from income</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54. collusion</td>
<td>n. annoying persistently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55. capital</td>
<td>o. a deceitful agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56. entitlement</td>
<td>p. process of a dispute settled by third party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57. prospectus</td>
<td>q. independently run business owned by parent company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58. subsidy</td>
<td>r. excused from duty or job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59. nepotism</td>
<td>s. joining of two or more companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60. harassment</td>
<td>t. the act of unfairly distinguishing between two groups of people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice Activities
Find a copy of a work-related memo, letter, or policy and see if the words you have learned in this chapter are used in the piece of writing. See if you can find five more business-related words that you can add to your vocabulary list.

Find an article in the business section of the paper or a magazine dedicated to business and see how many of these words are used in the publication. What are the articles about? Are there other words you can add to your vocabulary list? Try to determine the definition of the new words from the context of the article and then check the definition in your dictionary.
Answers

Words in Context
The first word we encounter is franchise and we know from the context that it must be a Wendy’s restaurant, so franchise could refer to the individual store or restaurant in a chain. Sarah reads the discrimination policy that explains that Wendy’s does not discriminate against people in their hiring practices, so discrimination must mean judging or treating someone differently. The sexual harassment policy does not allow flirting at work, so harassment must mean bothering someone or pressuring someone. Sarah makes her son the beneficiary of her life insurance policy, so we can conclude that her son will receive the money, or be the one to benefit from the policy if Sarah were to pass away. Her boss teaches her the jargon of the industry because she must know the terms used in the fast food industry, so jargon must mean language used in a particular industry. Sarah is cautioned against an act of nepotism and in the next sentence, we can deduce that nepotism must mean giving your family preferential treatment. Finally, we see the word perquisite used to explain an extra benefit Sarah receives in addition to her salary.

Sentence Completion
1. collusion. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. arbitration. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. capital. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. fiscal. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. jargon. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. franchise. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. exempt. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. perquisites. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. tenure. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. deductions. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. prospectus. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
12. sexual harassment. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
13. beneficiary. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. nepotism. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. consortium. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. entitlement. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
17. arbitrage. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
18. equity. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
19. subsidy. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
20. discrimination. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

Synonyms
21. c. addition. Deduction means the act of subtracting; since c is addition, it is not a synonym.
22. d. punishment. Perquisite means a bonus or privilege given in addition to salary; since punishment means a penalty, it is not a synonym.
23. a. termination of employment. Tenure means the state of holding a particular job or the guarantee of employment. Termination of employment is not a synonym because it means the end of one’s employment.
24. b. force. Exempt means to be excused from some rule or job; since force means to make someone do something, it is not a synonym.
25. d. special privilege. Equity means fairness or evenness of treatment, or the value of property after all claims have been made against it. Special privilege is not a synonym because it is not an even or fair arrangement. If you got this one wrong, you may have confused equity with entitlement.

26. a. one who gives. Beneficiary means one who will benefit from receiving something. Since one who gives is a person who gives something, it is not a synonym.

27. c. merger. Collusion means a deceitful agreement for fraudulent purposes. Merger is not a synonym because merger means the combining of two companies.

28. d. fair. Discrimination means the act of making distinctions and it is often used to refer to making distinctions between different groups of people in an unfair way. Since fair means even or just, it is not a synonym.

29. a. tax. Subsidy means a grant of money for a particular purpose. Tax is money paid to the government by citizens, so it is not a synonym.

30. d. franchise. Fiscal means pertaining to money or finance. Since franchise means a business owned by a parent company but run independently, it is not a synonym.

Antonyms

31. deduction. Deduction means the subtraction of cost from income, the opposite of the words in the list.

32. equity. Equity means fairness or evenness of treatment, the opposite of the words in the list.

33. entitlement. Entitlement means a special privilege or benefit enjoyed by a group of people, the opposite of the words in the list.

34. capital. Capital means accumulated wealth used to earn more money, the opposite of the words in the list.

35. exempt. Exempt means excused from a duty or job, the opposite of the words in the list.

36. discrimination. Discrimination means the act of making distinctions in treatment of people, the opposite of the words in the list.

37. harassment. Harassment means to harass or bother someone persistently in a threatening way, the opposite of the words in the list.

38. tenure. Tenure means a period of holding a job or a guarantee of employment, the opposite of the words in the list.

39. consortium. Consortium means a joining together of two or more businesses for a specific purpose, the opposite of the words in the list.

40. jargon. Jargon means the language used in a particular industry, the opposite of the words in the list.

Matching Questions

41. h
42. m
43. g
44. e
45. l
46. r
47. q
48. s
49. t
50. f
51. c
52. p
53. a
54. o
55. j
56. i
57. d
58. b
59. k
60. n
VOCABULARY LIST 6: BUSINESS TERMS

Across
4 beneficiary
5 harassment
6 consortium
8 collusion
11 entitlement
15 arbitration
16 capital
17 equity
18 tenure
19 subsidy

Down
1 discrimination
2 nepotism
3 jargon
7 franchise
9 deduction
10 arbitrage
12 perquisite
13 prospectus
14 fiscal
17 exempt

Across
J BE N E FC I AR Y
A S P
R C O
G H A R A S S M E N T
O I I
C O N S O R T I U M
I F M
C O L L U S I O N
R A D A
A E N T I T L E M E N T
P R I D C
E B P F O U H
A R B I T R A T I O N C A P I T A L
Q T O S T S
U R S C I E
I A P A O
S G E L N
I E C
E Q U I T Y T E N U R E
X E U
E S U B S I D Y
M
P
T
CHAPTER SUMMARY

The technology terms found in this chapter are words commonly used by technology experts and people who use a computer. No matter what your computer knowledge is, learning these words will be extremely useful because they are used frequently in advertisements, newspaper articles, computer manuals, and in many work places. Technology is such a huge part of our daily lives that it is important to feel comfortable with the terminology, or *jargon* (see Vocabulary List 6 if you are unfamiliar with this word), used in this industry. Technology jargon can be intimidating because many of the words, such as *cookie*, have other meanings or seem odd in the context of technology. Have fun with these words and think about how the definition of each word influenced how the word is used.

Many of these words were coined very recently and are intentionally similar to other commonly used words. For instance, a *motherboard* is the main circuit board of the computer. Why do you think it is called a motherboard instead of a sisterboard or brotherboard? As you read through these words and their definitions, underline parts of the words that may serve as useful memory tricks. For example, what is the difference between *uploading* and *downloading* a file? Since these words are all very new, be sure to use a very current dictionary or look at an online technology dictionary, such as www.webopedia.com, when you hear or read new technology words.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You will use 19 words from the vocabulary list to solve the puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 7: Technology Terms**

application
bandwidth
bitmap
cache
cookie
cursor
database
download
encryption
Ethernet
firewall
information technology
keyword
motherboard
network
plug-in
search engine
server
upload
workstation

**Across**
3 high-speed computer storage to help you access frequently accessed information locally
7 any computer connected to a local area network (LAN)
9 blinking line that shows where your mouse is on a computer screen
10 the main circuit board of a computer
11 transfer capacity in bits per second
14 translation of information into a secret code
15 allows a Web browser to run multimedia files
16 software program
17 information stored and organized so that a computer can quickly retrieve selected pieces of information

**Down**
1 a representative word that specifies a particular record or file
2 a network that allows a wide variety of computers to communicate
4 to transmit documents from your computer to a network or an online source
5 a message given to a Web browser by a Web server that is stored in the browser and sent back to the server every time the browser contacts the server for a Web page
6 a system to prevent unauthorized access to and from a private network
8 a program that searches documents for a keyword and then provides a list of those documents
12 a group of two or more computers linked together
13 to copy a file from an online source to your own computer
18 binary data that represents an image or display
19 a computer on a network that manages network resources
application  (ˈæ-plə-kə-shən)  
(noun)  
a software program that lets you complete a task on your computer, such as word processing, listening to music, or viewing a Web page. The computer ________ I use for word processing is really easy to learn.

bandwidth  (ˈbænd-with)  
(noun)  
the amount of information that one can send through a connection, usually measured in bits per second. At work, I can download files from the Internet a lot faster because I have more ________.

bitmap  (ˈbit-map)  
(noun)  
the representation in rows and columns of dots of an image in computer memory. I downloaded the ________ so I could keep the picture on my computer.

cache  (ˈkæsh)  
(noun)  
a high-speed storage mechanism that allows a computer to store frequently accessed information locally. I had to download the Web page again because it wasn’t saved in my computer’s ________.

cookie  (ˈkú-kē)  
(noun)  
a message given to a Web browser by a Web server that is stored in the browser and sent back to the server every time the browser contacts the server for a Web page. A ________ enables a Web page to recognize your computer when you log on to it so the page may say something like, “Welcome back, Jessie!”

cursor  (ˈkər-sər)  
(noun)  
a symbol, usually a blinking line that shows where the next letter will be typed on a computer screen. I bought the 12-inch laptop, and because the monitor is so small, I have a hard time seeing the ________.

database  (ˈdā-tə-bās)  
(noun)  
information stored and organized so that a computer can quickly retrieve selected pieces of information. Our ________ hasn’t been updated in six months, so I am not sure whether we have this item in stock.

download  (ˈdaʊn-lōd)  
(verb)  
the process of copying a document or file from an online source to your own computer. I had to ________ the application form from the university’s website before I could print it.
encryption  (inˈkripˌshən)  
(noun)  
the translation of information into a secret code
When entering my credit card number on a website, I am always worried that the ________, is not as secure as it should be and a hacker can easily get my personal information.

Ethernet  (ˈēˌthər·net)  
(noun)  
a common method of enabling computers in the same Local Area Network (LAN—see Vocabulary List 12: Acronyms) to communicate with each other
Before ________, computers in the same office could not communicate with each other.

firewall  (fīrˌwəl)  
(noun)  
a system (using either hardware or software) that prevents unauthorized access to and from a private network
My company’s ________, is ironclad; no one could ever hack into our computer system.

information technology (IT)  (inˌfərˈmāˌshən tekˈnāˌlōˌjē)  
(noun)  
the broad subject of anything concerning processing or managing information, especially in a large company
Because Alison is such a whiz with computers, she was recruited to head the ________, department here.

keyword  (ˈkēˌwərd)  
(noun)  
a word that specifies a particular record or file in programming a specific command
I entered the ________, Byzantine when I had to write a report on that era for school.

motherboard  (məˌthərˈbōrd)  
(noun)  
the main circuit board of a computer
She opened the computer and showed me the ________, a thin piece of plastic with many different wires running through it.

network  (ˈnet·wərk)  
(noun)  
a group of two or more computers linked together
At work, we have 20 computers on our ________,

plug-in  (ˈplag·in)  
(noun)  
a piece of hardware or software that adds a specific feature to a larger, already existing system
Once I downloaded the ________, I was able to see and listen to movie clips on my computer.

search engine  (ˈsərch·ˈen·jən)  
(noun)  
a program that searches documents, websites, and databases for a keyword and then provides a list of those documents
For some reason, this ________, is more efficient than the other one I was using; no matter what I am researching, I can find a slew of information.

server  (ˈsər·vər)  
(noun)  
a computer on a network that manages network resources
At my last company, the ________, was down so often it was hard to get anything accomplished on the computer.

upload  (əpˈläd)  
(verb)  
the opposite of download; to transmit documents from your computer to an online source
When I built my Web page, I had to ________, the final page to our network to add it to the website.
workstation  (’wərk-stə-shən)  
(noun)  
a type of computer that has enough power to run applications used in work environments, such as graphic design programs and software design programs; also refers to any computer connected to a LAN, whether a personal computer or workstation  

At home, I have a personal computer, but at work, I have a much faster _______ because I use it to develop video games.

Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 7 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

On Tom’s first day of work as a computer programmer, he had to set up his workstation. He was really excited because his computer was really fast and many of the applications he would use for work were already installed. First he connected his workstation to the network by using the Ethernet cord at his desk. This enabled him to communicate with all of the other computers in the office. Once he was connected to the network, he opened his Internet program and went immediately to his favorite search engine. He wanted to see how his favorite baseball team did in their game so he typed the keyword “baseball” in the search engine, and it gave him a list of several baseball-related websites. He quickly checked the score of the game and then got back to work.

Sentence Completion
Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 7 into the following sentences.

1. At work, I can communicate with the other computers in the office as long as they are connected on our _________________.
2. The ________________ prevents people without authorization from accessing our system and potentially damaging it.
3. When the ________________ goes down, we cannot access the Internet, save files, or communicate with other computers on the network.
4. I was surprised when the Web page said, “Welcome back, Margaret!” But then my friend explained how ________________ work.
5. The clerk said that they were out of the sofa we wanted to buy, but said she would check the ________________ to see if one of their other stores had it in stock.
6. In my computer class, I learned how to use several different graphic design ________________ (s).
7. When I first open my Internet program, the last Web page I went to appears in my browser window because it is saved in my computer’s ________________
8. My friend e-mailed me a funny animated cartoon, but I couldn’t watch it because I didn’t have the right ________________.
9. I wanted to do some research on the medication my doctor prescribed, so I used the name of the medication as the ________________ in my search.
10. I would like to work in the ____________ department at a company because I like to work with computers and help people use them more effectively.

11. When you press return on your keyboard, the ________________ moves to the next line.

12. It took me a long time to download the file because I didn’t have enough ____________.

13. I opened the ________________ in a graphic design program so I could edit the image.

14. At work, our network is connected via ________________.

15. He studied ________________, the translation of information into a secret code.

16. Before I left for my camping trip, I used a ____________ to search for information about the campsite.

17. I like to ________________ songs from the Internet so that I can listen to them on my computer.

18. I ________________(ed) my resume from my computer to an online job board.

19. My ________________ has a lot more memory than my computer at home.

20. I thought it would be really hard to add more memory to my computer, but I followed the directions and all I had to do was put it in the slot located on the ________________ of my computer.

21. _____ When I see pictures on the Web that I like, I download the images from the Web to my computer.

22. _____ A cookie is a high-speed storage mechanism that allows my computer to store information I frequently use.

23. _____ I used a server to do research on my new car by typing in the model and year. It then gave me a list of websites relating to my car.

24. _____ I just installed this new application on my computer that enables me to balance my checkbook and keep track of my expenses on my computer.

25. _____ Our office recently added five more computers to our network.

26. _____ Our computers are all connected via encryption so my computer can communicate with all of the others in the office.

27. _____ When you upload a file, you transmit it from your computer to an online bulletin board or network.

28. _____ The database is the main circuit board of the computer.

29. _____ At work, I can download files from the Internet much faster than at home because I have more bitmap.

30. _____ A firewall is used to protect a private network from unauthorized access.
Choosing the Right Word
Circle the word in bold that best completes the sentence.

31. At work, I have a(n) (application, workstation) that is much faster than my computer at home.

32. I saved the image I created in my design program as a (bitmap, cookie) so I could open it again in a different program.

33. When my mother first used a computer, she had difficulty seeing the (cache, cursor), but now that she is used to it, she knows to look for a blinking line.

34. He studied (encryption, information technology) and became an expert at deciphering secret codes used to protect hidden information.

35. When doing research, it is useful to come up with several (keywords, plug-ins) you can use to find articles and websites about your topic.

36. I was amazed at how easy it was to use a (network, search engine) to find so many websites—all I had to do was type in whatever topic I wanted to learn about, and then click the search button.

37. My boss asked me to create a (server, database) of all of our business contacts and clients so all of the contact information would be organized and easy to retrieve.

38. My friend sent me a funny animated cartoon, but when I opened it, a window popped up on the screen. It said I didn’t have the right (plug-in, cookie) to play the cartoon, but that I could download it for free from another website.

39. My sister got a job in the (Ethernet, information technology) department at a financial services company, so now she helps fix computer problems in the office and helps people use their computers more effectively for their work.

40. The (motherboard, server) is the computer at work that manages all of our network resources, so when there is a problem with it, we can’t share files with other computers or work on the website.
Matching Questions
Match the word in the first column with the corresponding word in the second column.

41. search engine a. process of copying files from an online source to your computer
42. motherboard b. process of copying files from your computer to an online or network location
43. workstation c. word used to specify particular file or record
44. application d. a system to protect a private network from outside access
45. cache e. main circuit board of a computer
46. database f. a group of computers linked together
47. upload g. a representation in rows and columns of dots of an image in computer memory
48. server h. stored and organized information that is easily retrievable
49. firewall i. information stored in Web browser and sent to a server when the browser contacts that server
50. bandwidth j. translation of information into a secret code
51. cursor k. program used to search for websites or documents containing a given keyword
52. Ethernet l. a high-speed computer used in work environments
53. plug-in m. protocol used to connect two or more computers to each other
54. network n. a module that adds a specific feature to a larger system
55. information technology o. subject of anything concerning processing or managing information
56. bitmap p. the capacity of data transfer
57. cookie q. a program that performs a certain task on a computer
58. download r. a computer on a network that manages all of the network resources
59. encryption s. a high-speed storage mechanism used to store frequently accessed information
60. keyword t. blinking line on computer screen

Practice Activities
Find an article about technology in the technology section of your local newspaper or in a magazine. Add at least five new technology words to your vocabulary list and write down the definition of your new words based on the context clues in the article. Look up your new words and write down the dictionary definition. Go back and reread the article with your vocabulary list handy and note how the new words are used in the article.

Go to your local library or computer center and use a computer to search on a search engine using some of your new vocabulary words as keywords. See if you can find articles or websites that refer to your new vocabulary words. Does knowing these new vocabulary words make using a computer easier? Can you find any online dictionaries or other tools to help you develop your vocabulary?
**Answers**

**Words in Context**
The first word we encounter is *workstation*. Just from dissecting the word, we can determine that it is a station where one does work. Tom is a computer programmer, so it must refer to the computer he will use for work. The context clues tell us that the *applications* are on his computer and are things that he will use for work, so we can conclude that *application* must mean programs on a computer. He connects to the *network* via the *Ethernet* so he can communicate with the other computers. The *network* is what he is connecting to, so *network* must mean the group of computers in the office. *Ethernet* is the type of cord he is using to connect to the network, so it must be a means of connecting several computers to each other. Finally, he uses a *search engine* to find information about baseball. The *keyword* is the word he uses to search and the *search engine* is a program that provides search results about baseball.

**Sentence Completion**

1. *network*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. *firewall*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. *server*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. *cookies*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. *database*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. *application*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. *cache*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. *plug-in*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. *keyword*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. *information technology*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. *cursor*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
12. *bandwidth*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
13. *bitmap*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. *Ethernet*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. *encryption*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. *search engine*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
17. *download*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
18. *upload*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
19. *workstation*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
20. *motherboard*. If you got this answer wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

**True/False**

21. True
22. False, correct word is cache
23. False, correct word is search engine
24. True
25. True
26. False, correct word is Ethernet
27. True
28. False, correct word is motherboard
29. False, correct word is bandwidth
30. True
### VOCABULARY LIST 7: TECHNOLOGY TERMS

#### Choosing the Right Word

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>workstation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>bitmap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>cursor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>encryption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>keywords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>search engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>plug-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>information technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>server</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Matching Questions

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VOCABULARY LIST 7: TECHNOLOGY TERMS

Across
3 cache
7 workstation
9 cursor
10 motherboard
11 bandwidth
14 encryption
15 plug-in
16 application
17 database

Down
1 keyword
2 Ethernet
4 upload
5 cookie
6 firewall
8 search engine
12 network
13 download
18 bitmap
19 server
In this chapter, you will learn many terms commonly used in the legal profession. Read through the list and see which words are familiar to you. Where have you seen or heard them before? Look at the prefix, root, and suffix of each word and see if there are any similarities between these new words and other words you already know which may serve as useful memory tricks. Once you are comfortable with these words, continue to build your legal vocabulary by reading articles about courtroom cases and watching the news.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 8: Legal Terms**

- abrogate
- adjudicate
- appellate
- affidavit
- bequest
- contraband
- deposition
- exhume
- extradite
- intestate
- ipso facto
- larceny
- lien
- litigious
- jurisprudence
- malfeasance
- perjury
- plagiarism
- sanction
- tort

**Down**

1. the act of giving or leaving by will
2. having the power to review the judgment of another court
3. wrongdoing or misconduct especially by a public official
4. a charge upon real or personal property for the satisfaction of some debt
5. to act as a judge
6. testimony taken down in writing under oath
7. to dig up, to unbury
8. the science or philosophy of law
9. by that very fact or act
10. prohibited by law
11. a sworn statement in writing made under oath
12. a wrongful act for which you can get damages or an injunction
13. the voluntary violation of an oath; false swearing
14. the act of stealing and passing off the ideas or words of another as one’s own
15. to surrender an alleged criminal to the state or country in which he or she can be tried
16. theft, purloining
17. contentious, argumentative
18. to abolish

**Across**

1. the act of giving or leaving by will
2. having the power to review the judgment of another court
3. wrongdoing or misconduct especially by a public official
4. a charge upon real or personal property for the satisfaction of some debt
5. to act as a judge
6. testimony taken down in writing under oath
7. to dig up, to unbury
8. the science or philosophy of law
9. by that very fact or act
10. prohibited by law
11. a sworn statement in writing made under oath
12. a wrongful act for which you can get damages or an injunction
13. the voluntary violation of an oath; false swearing
14. the act of stealing and passing off the ideas or words of another as one’s own
15. to surrender an alleged criminal to the state or country in which he or she can be tried
16. theft, purloining
17. contentious, argumentative
18. to abolish
**VOCABULARY LIST 8: LEGAL TERMS**

**abrogate**  (‘a-brə-gāt)
(verb)
to abolish by authoritative action
During the U.S. Civil War, the North fought the South and wanted the American government to ________ slavery.

**adjudicate**  (ə-jū-di-kāt)
(verb)
to act as a judge, to settle judicially
“You are not going to ________ this case, I am,” the judge said to the attorney.

**appellate**  (ə-pe-lāt)
(adj.)
having the power to review the judgment of another court
When a case is appealed, it is tried in an ________ court.

**affidavit**  (ə-fə-dā-vət)
(noun)
a sworn statement in writing made under oath
He was not asked to testify; instead, the attorney asked him to sign a written ________ that described what he knew about the case.

**bequest**  (bi-kwest)
(noun)
the act of bequeathing, the act of leaving someone something in a will, something that is bequeathed
When my grandmother died, she gave me her house as a ________.

**contraband**  (‘kän-trə-band)
(noun)
illegal or prohibited exporting or importing of goods Cuban cigars are ________ in this country; it is against the law to import them into the United States.

**deposition**  (de-pō-ẕi-shən)
(noun)
testimony under oath, taken down in writing
In his ________, he said that he saw a gun, but under cross-examination in court, he said that he didn’t remember seeing a gun.

**exhume**  (ig-züm)
(verb)
to remove from a grave; to bring back from neglect or obscurity
When archeologists excavate ancient tombs, they frequently ________ the remains of the people who are buried there.

**extradite**  (‘ek-strə-dīt)
(verb)
to surrender an alleged criminal to the state or country in which he or she can be tried
After ten years of hiding, he was ________(ed) to the United States to stand trial for murder.

**intestate**  (in-tes-tāt)
(adj.)
one who dies without a will
My grandfather died ________, so we didn’t know who in the family should inherit his house.
**VOCABULARY LIST 8: LEGAL TERMS**

**ipso facto** (ɪˈpsoʊ ˈfæktoʊ)
*adverb*
by the very fact or act, an inevitable act
In bankruptcy, an ________ provision is a provision which automatically comes into play when a company files for bankruptcy.

**larceny** (ˈlærni)
*noun*
the unlawful taking of someone else’s property with the intention of not giving it back
He was accused of ________ when he was found driving the stolen car.

**lien** (ˈlėn)
*noun*
a charge against real or personal property for the satisfaction of a debt or duty originally arising from the law
Before the bank would lend me the money, I had to prove that there were no previous ________ (s) on my property.

**litigious** (lɪˈtɪ dʒəs)
*adj.*
contentious situation, prone to litigation
When my landlord did not give us our security deposit back after we moved out, it turned into a ________ situation.

**jurisprudence** (jʊrᵻsˈprʊˌdɑn(t)s)
*noun*
a system of laws, the science or philosophy of the law
In law school, people study ________.

**malfeasance** (məlˈfēzən(t)s)
*noun*
wrongdoing or misconduct especially by a public official
When a government official embezzles money, it is an act of ________.

**perjury** (pərˈjə rē)
*noun*
lying or intentionally omitting information under oath
When she lied under oath, she committed ________.

**plagiarism** (ˈplə rə zəm)
*noun*
the act of passing off someone else's work as your own
In college, you can be expelled if you commit ________.

**sanction** (ˈsæŋk ʃən)
*noun*
authoritative permission or approval that makes a course of action valid, a law or decree
(verb)
to give permission or approval, to encourage or tolerate by indicating approval
The ruling was a ________, it made it clear that the court approved of the defendant’s behavior.
When the judge gave his ruling, he turned to the defendant and said, “I find you guilty as charged. This court does not ________ your behavior.”

**tort** (ˈtɔrt)
*noun*
wrongdoing for which damages can be claimed; an unintentional violation of someone's rights, which can result in civil action but not criminal proceedings
A ________ is an unintentional violation of another person’s rights.
Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 8 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

The attorney explained that if I gave a deposition, then I probably would not have to testify in court. I would still be under oath, but my testimony would be given and transcribed into written form before the trial actually began. I was glad I didn’t have to testify because the case seemed pretty ridiculous to me. My Aunt Sally died intestate and without children, so the family did not know what she wanted us to do with her possessions. I was sure that she meant for her house to be a bequest for my mother who is her sister; yet my aunt’s ex-husband, Tom, said the house should be his. He said he had a signed affidavit stating that my aunt told him she would leave him the house. Initially, my mom and I thought we could keep this from becoming a litigious matter, but Tom wasn’t willing to discuss the situation with us and come to a compromise. He wanted a third party to adjudicate this dispute, so he hired an attorney and we were forced to do the same.

Sentence Completion
Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 8 into the following sentences.

1. The mayor issued a ________________________ approving the city’s subway improvement plans.

2. When I clerked for a judge, I was lucky to be able get to work in a(n) ____________________ court, where I saw many cases appealed.

3. Since it was a small case, I didn’t have to go to court; instead, I had to give a ________________________ under oath while a stenographer recorded everything I said.

4. Many types of fur are considered ________________________ and cannot be imported into the country.

5. I am leaving my antiques to my children as a ________________________.

6. I had to sign a(n) ________________________ that stated the house was in perfect condition and that the leak had been fixed.

7. It would be nice if the federal government would ________________________ the use of nuclear weapons.

8. When my brother and I were children and got into petty fights, sometimes my father would act as a judge and ________________________ our dispute.

9. In the medical community, many doctors are leading a ________________________ reform movement, as patients have begun to sue for malpractice even when the doctor is not at fault.

10. She was charged with grand theft ________________________ when she was only sixteen, and since then, has been in and out of juvenile detention centers.
11. A(n) _______________ clause is a statement that says a contract or agreement will automatically terminate on the expiration date of the agreement unless otherwise amended.

12. I do not want to die _______________, so I plan to draft a will that clearly states who should inherit my possessions.

13. When public officials engage in _______________, many citizens feel betrayed.

14. Committing _______________ while under oath is a very serious offense.

15. The teacher accused the student of _______________ when she handed in a paper she found on the Internet.

16. _______________, the philosophy of the law, is an interesting but complicated topic.

17. When the criminal escaped to Mexico, we hoped Mexico would _______________ him so we could make him stand trial in the United States for his crime.

18. We have a _______________ on our house, because we were not able to pay off our debt, so now the bank from which we borrowed the money may take our house to satisfy the loan.

19. The body was _______________(ed) from the crypt.

20. When the attorney called, I knew that the matter had become _______________ and we were no longer going to try and settle our disagreement out of court.

True/False

In the space provided, write a T if the sentence is true or an F if it is false. If the sentence is false, cross out the word that makes it false and write the correct word from Vocabulary List 8 above it.

21. _____ When the Mayor embezzled money from the city, it was an act of jurisprudence.

22. _____ Cases are appealed in appellate court.

23. _____ In a court of law, the judge is the person who will abrogate the case.

24. _____ Lying under oath is an act of plagiarism.

25. _____ When the cops found him with the stolen diamond ring, they charged him with larceny.

26. _____ When the witness gave her affidavit, she was asked many questions under oath while a stenographer wrote down both the questions and her responses.

27. _____ When I went through customs at the airport, they asked me if I was carrying any contraband items.

28. _____ After her death, her family realized that she had died intestate so they were not sure what to do with her estate.

29. _____ If you run to another country after committing a crime, there is a very good chance that the country will exhume you to your homeland to be prosecuted.

30. _____ A litigious matter is a contentious matter and one that will most likely be dealt with through the justice system.
Choosing the Right Word
Circle the word in bold that best completes the sentence.

31. Her father died (**ipso facto, intestate**) so she and her siblings had difficulty dividing his estate.

32. Before we could close the deal, the borrower had to provide evidence to the lender that there were no (**liens, larcenies**) against the borrower’s property.

33. In our town, our water became contaminated because a local factory was not disposing of dangerous chemicals properly, so we brought a (**sanction, tort**) claim against them and won.

34. I am very interested in studying (**jurisprudence, malfeasance**), because I am fascinated by the different systems of law and the philosophical tenets on which they are based.

35. In our country, child labor was (**extradited, abrogated**) a long time ago; however, in some countries, people are still fighting to end it.

36. When my grandfather died, he left me his piano as a(n) (**contraband, bequest**), which touched me deeply because he was the one who taught me how to play.

37. After they found the tomb, the explorers wanted to (**extradite, exhume**) the remains to see if they could determine the date it was buried.

38. The contract stated that the parties must give written notification of intent to extend the contract, or the contract (**ipso facto, adjudicate**) terminated on the expiration.

39. Before the bank would give us our loan, the attorney prepared a(n) (**deposition, affidavit**) which stated that our property was debt-free and environmentally sound and asked me to sign it under oath.

40. In most schools, it is a violation of the honor code to commit (**perjury, plagiarism**) because it is unethical to hand in someone else’s work and pretend it is your own.
Matching Questions

Match the word in the first column with the corresponding word in the second column.

41. lien  a. the very fact
42. extradite  b. testimony under oath
43. adjudicate  c. the act of passing someone else's writing off as your own
44. bequest  d. to abolish
45. contraband  e. a violation of someone's rights
46. perjury  f. one who dies without a will
47. jurisprudence  g. the act of bequeathing
48. ipso facto  h. charge against real property to satisfy a debt
49. exhume  i. to act as judge
50. abrogate  j. contentious
51. appellate  k. misconduct, especially of a public official
52. larceny  l. to surrender a criminal to a country where he or she can be tried
53. tort  m. lying under oath
54. sanction  n. to remove from a grave
55. affidavit  o. stealing
56. litigious  p. sworn written statement
57. malfeasance  q. illegal import or export of goods
58. plagiarism  r. authoritative approval
59. intestate  s. the philosophy of the law
60. deposition  t. having the power to review the judgment of another court

Practice Activities

Read an article about a current or historical court case and see how many of the vocabulary words from this chapter appear in the article. Write down any additional legal words you find in the article and their definitions based on the context clues. Be sure to look up each word in your dictionary and to write down its definition as well.

Find a legal document such as the lease for your apartment, the back of a credit card application, a letter from a lawyer, the agreement with your car insurance company, or any other contract. Read through the document, add any new legal words to your vocabulary list, and look them up. As you read, think about the following questions: How is the document written? Is it easy to understand? Why or why not? How are legal words used in the document?
Words in Context
The first word we encounter is deposition. The context tells us that it is an alternative to testifying in court, but that you are still under oath. We can conclude that it means a written testimony under oath prior to a trial. Sally died intestate, leaving the family unsure of how she wanted them to split up her belongings, so intestate must mean without a will. The narrator says he thinks Sally meant the house to be a bequest, or meant the narrator’s mother to inherit the house. So bequest must mean something that is left to someone in a will. Tom has a signed affidavit, so an affidavit must mean a written statement. The narrator didn’t want this to become litigious but it has, so we can conclude that litigious must mean contentious and prone to litigation. Finally, Tom wants someone else to adjudicate, or settle, this dispute. So adjudicate must mean to act as judge or to settle judicially.

Sentence Completion
1. sanction. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
2. appellate. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
3. deposition. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
4. contraband. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
5. bequest. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
6. affidavit. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
7. abrogate. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
8. adjudicate. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
9. tort. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
10. larceny. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
11. ipso facto. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
12. intestate. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
13. malfeasance. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
14. perjury. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
15. plagiarism. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
16. jurisprudence. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
17. extradite. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
18. lien. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
19. exhume. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.
20. litigious. If you got this question wrong, go back and review the word’s definition.

True/False
21. False, correct word is malfeasance
22. True
23. False, correct word is adjudicate
24. False, correct word is perjury
25. True
26. False, correct word is deposition
27. True
28. True
29. False, correct word is extradite
30. True
### Choosing the Right Word

31. intestate  
32. liens  
33. tort  
34. jurisprudence  
35. abrogated  
36. bequest  
37. exhume  
38. ipso facto  
39. affidavit  
40. plagiarism

### Matching Questions

41. h  
42. l  
43. i  
44. g  
45. q  
46. m  
47. s  
48. a  
49. n  
50. d  
51. t  
52. o  
53. e  
54. r  
55. p  
56. j  
57. k  
58. c  
59. f  
60. b
Across
3 malfeasance
7 exhume
8 jurisprudence
11 affidavit
12 tort
15 extradite
17 larceny
18 litigious
21 abrogate

Down
1 bequest
2 appellate
4 lien
5 adjudicate
6 deposition
9 ipso facto
10 contraband
13 perjury
16 plagiarism
19 intestate
20 sanction
That is, it is not only in the context of an English class or a sophisticated conversation about the fine points of literature that we use such terminology. For example, we encounter irony not only in Joseph Heller’s famous novel, *Catch-22*, but also when the math teacher makes more computation errors than all her students combined!

Try to consider the following vocabulary words both in terms of how they may appear in literary texts in the more general fabric of our lives.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 9: Terms Relating to Language and Literature**

anecdote
anthropomorphism
archetype
aphorism
construe
deduce
epigram
etymology
infer
irony
onomatopoeia
personification
perspective
protagonist
prose
pun
rhetoric
satire
soliloquy
trite

**Across**

3 using language effectively and persuasively
4 banal, ordinary, common
7 play on words
8 maxim, adage
9 ordinary writing
13 humanization
15 incongruity, or expressing something other than, or opposite to, the literal meaning
16 infer
17 the use of ridicule, usually to criticize
18 explain, interpret

**Down**

1 deduce, judge
2 a poem or paragraph dealing with a single thought
5 word origins
6 model, exemplar
9 embodiment
10 using words whose sounds suggest the meaning
11 outlook, point of view
12 talking to oneself, usually in drama, to reveal thoughts without actually addressing the listener
13 short tale relating an incident
14 main character
**anecdote**  (’a-nik·dōt)  
*(noun)*  
a short account of an interesting or humorous incident  
In order to capture classroom life for the visiting parents at “Back to School Night,” the teacher shared a number of comical ________ (s) about her kindergarten students.

**anthropomorphism**  (an·thrə·pə·mōr·fi·zəm)  
*(noun)*  
attribution of human motivation, characteristics, or behavior to inanimate objects, animals, or natural phenomena  
The Native American legend exhibited elements of _______, as it was a bear who emotionally narrated the tale of loss on the reservation.

**archetype**  (’är·ki·tīp)  
*(noun)*  
an original model or type after which other similar things are patterned; an ideal example of a type  
Shakespeare’s dramas provide a literary ________ that has influenced many subsequent authors who follow the pattern his work provides.

**aphorism**  (’a-fə·ri·zəm)  
*(noun)*  
a brief statement of a truth or opinion; a saying or an adage  
The old _______, “Good things come to those who wait,” proved true when after many years, the patient boy got his wish.

**construe**  (kən·'strü)  
*(verb)*  
to explain the meaning of; interpret; to analyze the grammatical structure of (a sentence)  
The boy ________ (d) his mother’s silence as disappointment in his behavior.

**deduce**  (di·’dūs)  
*(verb)*  
to reach a conclusion by reasoning; to infer from a general principle; to trace the origin of  
Are you able to ________ the meaning of a word once you are given ample context clues?

**epigram**  (’ē·pə·gram)  
*(noun)*  
a short, witty poem expressing a single thought or observation; a concise, clever, often paradoxical statement or saying  
The novelist began her text with a short ________ on the first page that truly captured the complexity of the story that followed.

**etymology**  (e·tə·’mā·lo·jē)  
*(noun)*  
the origin and historical development of a word’s forms, meanings and usages  
Students were asked to trace the ________ of the word, looking in particular for its earliest usage.

**infer**  (’in·fər)  
*(verb)*  
to conclude or reason from evidence, premises, or circumstance; to hint or imply  
Given the circumstances, we may ________ that the young mother’s motive for putting her baby up for adoption was indeed honorable.

**irony**  (’î·rə·nē)  
*(noun)*  
the use of words to express something different from, and often opposite to, their literal meaning; a literary style employing such contrasts for witty effect; incongruity between what might be expected and what actually occurs  
The ________ of his name, “Tiny,” became apparent when I saw the seven-foot-tall man for the first time.
onomatopoeia (ə-nə-mäi-təˈpē-ə)  
(noun)  
the formation or use of words that imitate the sounds associated with the objects or actions to which they refer  
The author of this musical review uses _______ to describe the sounds of the musical instruments at yesterday’s concert.

personification (pər·sä·nä·fəˈkä·shən)  
(noun)  
a person or thing typifying a certain quality or idea; an embodiment or exemplification; a figure of speech in which inanimate objects or abstractions are endowed with human qualities or are represented as possessing human form  
The puppy was a true _______ of playfulness as he went to fetch the stick every time his owner threw it.

perspective (pər·ˈspektəiv)  
(noun)  
a mental view or outlook; a point of view; the ability to perceive things in their actual interrelations or comparative importance  
I didn’t have a good _______ on Abby’s current situation until I learned that she had grown up an only child.

protagonist (prə·ˈta·ɡə·nist)  
(noun)  
the main character in a drama or other literary work  
The _______ of the story, Bridget, is a young woman that many women in their 30s can easily relate to, as she struggles with common issues such as dating, dieting, and work.

prose (ˈprōz)  
(noun)  
ordinary speech or writing, without metrical structure (as in poetry)  
I prefer to read _______ instead of poetry.

pun (ˈpən)  
(noun)  
play on words  
Mark is always making a ________, or a play on words, to make people laugh.

rhetoric (ˈre·tə·rik)  
(noun)  
the art or study of using language effectively and persuasively  
Because he is such a good speaker, his ________ is very convincing, even if what he says doesn’t make a lot of sense.

satire (ˈsa·tər)  
(noun)  
a literary work in which human vice or folly is attacked through irony or wit  
I love late-night television talk shows because the hosts always make a ________ of current politics.

soliloquy (sə·ˈli·lo·kwē)  
(noun)  
a dramatic or literary form of discourse in which a character talks to himself or herself or reveals his or her thoughts without addressing a listener  
As I get older, I find that I talk out loud to myself, just like a character in a drama who performs a ________.

trite (ˈtrit)  
(adj.)  
lacking power to evoke interest through overuse or repetition; hackneyed  
Because he kept repeating the same joke over and over again, it became ________.  

VOCABULARY LIST 9: TERMS RELATING TO LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE
Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 9 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

When asked why the prose of the new novelist, Jane Jackson, appealed to me, I immediately thought of what makes any good novel. Considering the standard archetype, the successful novel should include mastery of a range of literary elements. In Jackson's case, she indeed effectively employs the device of anthropomorphism, in particular, when she writes of the "Angry Storm" waiting to take her revenge. It is as if the storm itself is the novel's protagonist: its central and most dynamic character. An anecdote I would like to share regarding the popularity of Jackson's writing takes place on the New York City subway. I noticed a young woman reading Jackson's latest novel, a satire that exposes and pokes fun of dating in the big city. When I, instinctively as a literary critic, approached the reader to ask her opinion, I realized it was Jackson herself! The irony of the situation was that the novelist still wished to critique the text she had authored; she was her own worst critic!

Sentence Completion
Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 9 into the following sentences.

1. My dad told us a(n) ________________ about his childhood that was so funny, none of us could stop laughing.

2. I love to learn the origin of words, so my teacher suggested I might like to read a book on the ________________ of language.

3. I ________________ (d) his smile as accepting my offer.

4. I decided to start my novel with a(n) ________________ to get readers thinking about what was to come.

5. The little girl's favorite cartoon is one that uses ________________ to tell the story; the silverware, refrigerator, and everything else in the kitchen come to life.

6. When something or someone typifies or embodies a given idea, it is a ________________ of that concept.

7. An ideal example of a given type is known as a standard or a(n) ________________.

8. A ________________ is a play on words.

9. ________________ is the art of effective language use.

10. When a character or performer reveals her thoughts without addressing a listener, she is issuing a ________________.

11. A brief statement of truth or opinion is known as a(n) ________________ or a saying.

12. One is often able to ________________, or to reach a conclusion by reasoning or inference.
13. The complex device, ________________, is when words are used to express something different from, and opposite to, their literal meaning.

14. Buzz is a clear example of ________________, when a word imitates the sounds associated with the actions of objects to which they refer.

15. To ________________ is to understand from a hint or implication, rather than from something directly stated.

16. Putting a situation in the proper ________________ often requires a certain mental outlook or point of view.

17. A novel’s main character, or ________________, is central to the action of the text.

18. When a saying, idea or word is so overused that it fails to evoke interest or convey meaning, we may call it ________________.

19. The finest novelists have a real signature to their writing or the ________________ they produce.

20. Irony and wit contribute to the makings of an effective ________________ that attacks human folly.

**Synonyms**
The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. archetype
   a. standard
   b. statement
   c. example
   d. ideal
   e. model

22. protagonist
   a. main character
   b. principal figure
   c. fastest player
   d. first actor
   e. leader of a cause

23. perspective
   a. point of view
   b. prescription
   c. evaluation of significance
   d. outlook
   e. perceived interrelations

24. prose
   a. depressing language
   b. ordinary writing
   c. non-metrical writing
   d. commonplace expression
   e. ordinary speech

25. pun
   a. ambiguous expression
   b. play on words
   c. similar sound
   d. rhetorical joke
   e. powerful understanding

26. satire
   a. classical text
   b. ironic ridicule
   c. witty literature
   d. caricature
   e. lampoon
27. trite
   a. commonplace
   b. habitual
   c. powerful
   d. overused
   e. banal

28. aphorism
   a. saying
   b. adage
   c. statement of truth
   d. euphemism
   e. maxim

29. deduce
   a. conclude
   b. compare
   c. infer
   d. reason
   e. suppose

30. construe
   a. to go against
   b. interpret
   c. render
   d. explain the meaning of
   e. analyze the structure of

33. Based on the given evidence and circumstances, I was able to construe my own hypothesis.

34. Irony is when words imitate the sounds associated with the actions to which they refer.

35. My perspective on the subject shifted when the author’s prose helped me step into another point of view.

36. Cinderella, a well-known pun, captivates many readers who dream of transformation.

37. The film was a parody or soliloquy of the futuristic genre, as it poked fun at depictions of space travel and alien encounters.

38. Her prose was seamless and descriptive as she narrated her travels abroad for a captive audience.

39. Throughout the story, the lion was a personification of all things regal and really stood as a symbol of royalty.

40. A word’s epigram can reveal a great deal about the history of its usages.

**Choosing the Right Word**

Circle the word in bold that best completes the sentence.

41. I thought she was such a good storyteller as she shared a number of humorous (anecdotes, archetypes) about her beloved grandmother.

42. The valentine card included a short, witty (etymology, epigram) that I found quite clever.

43. The character was a (personification, satire) of fear as she truly embodied the emotion.

44. There was such (irony, onomatopoeia) in the way she unexpectedly ended up rejecting the job she had worked for all her career.

---

**VOCABULARY LIST 9: TERMS RELATING TO LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE**
45. Sometimes, two words that mean different things yet sound the same provide the opportunity for a (prose, pun).

46. The (rhetoric, protagonist) in the persuasive essay was so strong it convinced me to change my position.

47. As a reader, I tend to relate to a (soliloquy, protagonist) whose experiences reflect mine.

48. Although the poet did have some unique talent, he employed many phrases that were overused and that I found (trite, ironic).

49. What was so compelling about the actor’s (soliloquy, satire) was how the audience came to understand the inner workings of his mind, even though he never addressed them directly.

50. The way the author used flashbacks provided an interesting (pun, perspective) on the protagonist’s life story.

**Practice Activities**

Rent a movie with a friend and try talking about the way the story unfolds: how the actors, screenplay writers, and directors give you, the viewer, your information. In your film (also a literary text) discussion, try to use, in context, a number of words from Vocabulary List 9.

Recommend a book to a friend and in explaining why it is a worthwhile read, try using some of the literary terms you learned in Vocabulary List 9. Also, read the *New York Times* book review section. You’ll see that those literary critics may talk about the quality of prose, an author’s rhetorical gift or style, or the ironic plot twist the reader encounters.
After reading this paragraph, we understand one literary critic’s opinion of new novelist Jane Jackson’s prose. We understand that prose refers to the novelist’s writing: written text as opposed to metrical poetry (Jackson is a novelist, not a poet). We are also privy to a direct experience the critic had with the novelist herself. The critic shares this anecdote, or story-like episode, in order to convey the irony, or unlikelihood, of Jackson being more critical of her own work than any other reader. We are able to recognize archetype as meaning ideal or standard both because of the way the critic refers to it as a model of what “good prose” should have, and also because the word is used in conjunction with the word standard, a synonym for archetype. The three literary terms—anthropomorphism, protagonist, and satire—may be understood in context as the critic explains how they specifically relate to the novelist’s prose. Jackson evidently writes about a storm that possesses human qualities (anthropomorphism) and, in fact, this animated storm operates as the main character (protagonist). The critic also describes Jackson’s latest novel as a satire: a text that exposes and mocks dating in the big city.

Sentence Completion
1. anecdote. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. etymology. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. construe. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. epigram. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. anthropomorphism. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. personification. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. archetype. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. pun. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. rhetoric. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. soliloquy. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. aphorism. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
12. deduce. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
13. irony. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. onomatopoeia. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. infer. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. perspective. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
17. protagonist. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
18. trite. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
19. prose. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
20. satire. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
**Synonyms**

21. b. *statement*. An archetype is an original model after which other things are patterned, so *statement*, simply something that is said or put forth, would not be a synonym.

22. c. *fastest player*. A protagonist is the main character in a drama or other literary work. In ancient Greek drama, a protagonist is the first actor to engage in dialogue. A protagonist is also a champion or leader of a cause. Speed has little to do with a protagonist's centrality; therefore, fastest player would not be a synonym.

23. b. *prescription*. Perspective is a mental outlook, point of view or the ability to perceive things as they actually relate to one another. Prescription is the establishment of a claim up front: literally, written beforehand, and would not be a synonym.

24. a. *depressing language*. Prose is ordinary speech or writing, without metrical structure. It is also a term used to denote commonplace expression. That language may be depressing does not define it as prose. Thus, depressing language would not be a synonym.

25. e. *powerful understanding*. A pun is wordplay, sometimes on different senses of the same word and sometimes on the similar sense or sound of different words. Powerful understanding would not be a synonym.

26. a. *classical text*. A satire is a literary work in which human folly or vice is attacked through wit or irony. A text’s being considered a classic does not constitute it a satire. Therefore, classical text would not be a synonym.

27. c. *powerful*. When language is trite, it lacks power to evoke interest because of its overuse or repetition. Powerful is in fact the opposite of trite and thus would not be a synonym.

28. d. *euphemism*. An aphorism is a brief statement of truth or opinion: Adage and maxim are essentially synonymous with aphorism while a *euphemism* is a nice way of saying something that may be offensive. Euphemism is not a synonym for aphorism.

29. b. *compare*. To deduce is to reach a conclusion by reasoning or to infer from a general principle. Comparison—considering two things in terms of each other—is not a matter of deductive reasoning. Therefore, compare would not be a synonym.

30. a. *to go against*. To construe is to explain the meaning of, to interpret, or to analyze the structure of a sentence, for example. This does not mean to go against: not a synonym for construe.

**True/False**

31. True
32. True
33. False, the correct word is infer
34. False, the correct word is onomatopoeia
35. True
36. False, the correct word is protagonist
37. False, the correct word is satire
38. True
39. True
40. False, the correct word is etymology

**Choosing the Right Word**

41. *anecdotes*. Context clue is that she is telling stories that are humorous.

42. *epigram*. Context clue is that an epigram or short saying may be described as witty or clever.

43. *personification*. Context clue is that personification refers to a person’s typifying or embodying a certain quality: in this case, fear.

44. *irony*. Context clue is that irony conveys the incongruity between what might be expected and what actually occurs.
45. **pun.** Context clue is that a pun is a play on words, such as those that may sound alike.

46. **rhetoric.** Context clue is that rhetoric is the art of using language effectively and persuasively.

47. **protagonist.** Context clue is that a protagonist is the main character of a text whose experiences provide the central action.

48. **trite.** Context clue is that trite phrases are described as overused and here, in contrast to the poet’s talent.

49. **soliloquy.** Context clue is that a soliloquy is a dramatic form in which a character talks to himself, revealing his thoughts without addressing a listener.

50. **perspective.** Context clue is that perspective refers to a point of view; in this case, that particular viewpoint as achieved through the device of flashback.
Across
3 rhetoric
4 trite
7 pun
8 aphorism
9 prose
13 anthropomorphism
15 irony
16 deduce
17 satire
18 construe

Down
1 infer
2 epigram
5 etymology
6 archetype
9 personification
10 onomatopoeia
11 perspective
12 soliloquy
13 anecdote
14 protagonist
While a large vocabulary may in fact increase our confidence as well as our comprehension and self-expression skills, these goals do not rest on the length of the words we come to know. After all, how often does *antidisestablishmentarianism* come up in conversation?

This chapter seeks to familiarize you with a number of short, but important, words that frequently appear in a variety of contexts.

**CHAPTER SUMMARY**

Sometimes, we may falsely assume that vocabulary building means learning a host of long, multisyllabic words. We may hope to throw around these ten-dollar words in our speech and writing in order to sound smart and articulate.

While a large vocabulary may in fact increase our confidence as well as our comprehension and self-expression skills, these goals do not rest on the length of the words we come to know. After all, how often does *antidisestablishmentarianism* come up in conversation?

This chapter seeks to familiarize you with a number of short, but important, words that frequently appear in a variety of contexts.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

Vocabulary List 10: Short Words That Mean a Lot

acme
awry
bane
cite
crux
dire
dupe
eke
elite
gibe
maim
mete
moot
oust
purge
roil
sham
staid
veer
vie

Across
1 force out
4 to allot
6 fool, chump
8 to cripple
11 askew, twisted
13 cream of the crop, upper crust
15 awful, appalling
17 to contest
18 to jeer or scoff
19 core, kernel

Down
2 a hoax, an impostor
3 serious, somber
5 source of persistent annoyance
7 to cleanse, to rid
9 pinnacle, high point
10 a case no longer of actual significance
12 to quote as an authority
14 to supplement, to make something last
16 to provoke, contaminate
17 to turn, or digress
**VOCABULARY LIST 10: SHORT WORDS THAT MEAN A LOT**

- **acme** (əˈkēmē) (noun)
  the highest point, as of achievement or development
  When the singer was awarded the Lifetime Achievement Award, she knew she had reached the ________ of her career.

- **awry** (əˈrī) (adv.)
  in a position that is turned or twisted toward one side or away from the correct course; askew.
  When a number of difficult variables entered into the situation, his carefully mapped plans went terribly ________.

- **bane** (ˈbān) (noun)
  fatal injury or ruin; a cause of harm, ruin, or death; a source of persistent annoyance or exasperation
  The persistent beetles that continued to eat away at the crop of string beans in spite of all efforts at extermination became the ________ of the farmer’s existence.

- **cite** (ˈsīt) (verb)
  to quote as an authority or example
  The historian was careful to ________ a number of examples in order to back her claim that revolutions happen slowly.

- **crux** (ˈkrōks) (noun)
  the basic or central point or feature; a puzzling or apparently insoluble problem
  After hours of debate, the opponents finally arrived at the ________ of the matter and at last the central question became clear.

- **dire** (ˈdīr) (adj.)
  warning of, or having dreadful or terrible consequences; urgent; desperate
  The poorly funded hospital was in ________ need of medical supplies given the number of neglected patients in desperate need.

- **dupe** (ˈdūp) (noun)
  an easily deceived person
  The unsuspecting young man felt like a ________ when he saw his girlfriend walk by in the arms of another man.

- **ekte** (ˈēk) (verb)
  to supplement or get with great effort; to make last by practicing strict economy
  With careful management, the townspeople were able to ________ out three more day’s use of water, although the well had virtually run dry.

- **elite** (əˈlēt (iˈlēt, əˈlēt)) (noun)
  a group or class of persons or a member of such a group or class, enjoying superior intellectual, social, or economic status; the best or most skilled members of a group
  The college’s ________ students enjoyed high grades and membership in the exclusive and esteemed honors program.

- **gibe** (ˈjīb) (verb)
  to make taunting, heckling, or jeering remarks
  Mom made it clear that it was not acceptable to ________ our younger brother at the dinner table even though we insisted our taunting was in good fun.
maim (ˈmām)  
(verb)  
to disable or disfigure; to make imperfect or defective; impair  
Is it possible that such a seemingly mild car accident would ________ the driver to such proportions, causing him to lose his eyesight in one eye?

mete (ˈmēt)  
(verb)  
to distribute by or as if by measure; allot  
It was the captain’s responsibility to carefully ________ out the limited rations so that each man received an equal amount.

moot (ˈmūt)  
(noun)  
a hypothetical case argued as an exercise; a case no longer of actual significance  
Since the position was no longer available, discussing who might better fill the spot became a ________ point.

oust (ˈəŭst)  
(verb)  
To eject from a position or place; force out  
The community hoped to ________ the superintendent from the school district since his policies had proved not only ineffective, but damaging.

purge (ˈpərj)  
(verb)  
to free from impurities; purify; to rid of sin, guilt, or defilement; to clear a person of a charge; to get rid of people considered undesirable  
After her candid testimony that evidenced her innocence, the woman on the stand was able to ________ herself of all criminal charges.

roil (ˈrōjəl)  
(verb)  
to make a liquid muddy or cloudy by stirring up sediment; to displease or disturb; vex  
My husband’s disturbing refusal to help with the housework began to ________ me.

sham (ˈsham)  
(noun)  
something false or empty that is said to be genuine; one who assumes a false character; an impostor  
After a year of marriage, he recognized his wife as a ________ and sadly saw that his relationship was based on deception and lies.

staid (ˈstād)  
(adj.)  
characterized by sedate dignity and propriety; sober. Fixed; permanent  
At her mother’s funeral, Sue remained ________ and sober, demonstrating her unwavering determination to not show her grief.

veer (ˈvir)  
(verb)  
to turn aside from a course, direction, or purpose; swerve  
The car’s driver was able to ________ in the other direction in order to avoid a dangerous crash with an oncoming biker.

vie (ˈvī)  
(verb)  
to strive for superiority; compete; rival  
The two elite players would ________ for the championship.
Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 10 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

There is one big example that I can cite to prove that I am one of the biggest dupes that ever lived. It involves a situation with one of my friends from work. By the time I realized what a sham my so-called friend was, I wondered how I didn’t see his scheming ways all along. I tried to straighten things out between us, but everything started to go awry anyway when I realized that the money I had given him to put toward opening our own business had mysteriously disappeared. When I confronted him about it, with a lot of prying I was able to barely eke out the truth, but by then the situation had already become too dire—there was no getting my money back. Unfortunately, I have to see him—the miserable bane of my existence—every day!

Sentence Completion
Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 10 into the following sentences.

1. When a situation goes off course, it is said to have gone _________________.

2. To quote as an authority or an example is to _________________.

3. The ________________ of one's freedom, for example, is the cause of freedom's decay or disappearance.

4. When you reach the ________________ of your career, you know you achieved the highest point possible.

5. A(n) ________________ is an easily deceived person.

6. One who enjoys superior status in a given arena is considered _________________.

7. To ________________ out supplies is to distribute them carefully in equal amounts.

8. The ________________ of an argument is its basic or central feature.

9. You may be able to ________________ out an income by working multiple jobs.

10. A hypothetical case may be considered _________________.

11. If your situation is urgent or desperate, you are perhaps in ________________ need of assistance.

12. To ________________ is to make heckling, taunting remarks.

13. A lecture can ________________ off course or change direction if the speaker is not very careful.

14. To disable or disfigure a person is to ________________ his or her body.
15. His ________________ composure belied the inner turmoil on his mind.

16. When you disturb or vex another person, you ________________ her.

17. You pretended to be genuine, but you are completely false and a total ________________!

18. We wondered whether to ________________, or force out, the coach after he became unprofessional with his players.

19. It became necessary to ________________ his body of toxins in order to purify the system and restore health.

20. The competitive siblings felt they needed to ________________ for the approval of their parents.

**Synonyms**

The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. acme
   a. summit
   b. apex
   c. highest point
   d. culmination
   e. average

22. cite
   a. attribute
   b. view
   c. honor
   d. reference
   e. quote

23. elite
   a. chosen
   b. lightweight
   c. nobility
   d. superiors
   e. the best

24. purge
   a. soil
   b. cleanse
   c. clear of charge
   d. eliminate
   e. evacuate

25. sham
   a. imitation
   b. false pretense
   c. impostor
   d. hero

26. veer
   a. steer
   b. swerve
   c. shift direction
   d. turn off course
   e. deviate

27. staid
   a. serious
   b. tired
   c. sedate
   d. permanent
   e. proper

28. roil
   a. displease
   b. disturb
   c. cheat
   d. vex
   e. stir up
29. bane
   a. curse
   b. killing
   c. ruin
   d. twist
   e. evil

30. awry
   a. turned
   b. elevated
   c. twisted
   d. amiss
   e. askew

Antonyms
Choose the word from Vocabulary List 10 that means the opposite, or most nearly the opposite, of the following groups of words.

31. nadir, bottom, lowest point, underachievement
32. soil, condemn, retain, keep
33. actual, significant, relevant, important
34. protect, retain, house, host
35. please, calm, clarify, comfort
36. dynamic, shifting, changing, animated
37. genuine, trustworthy, sincere, authentic
38. inferior, sub-par, subordinate, second-rate
39. savior, relief, preserver, gift
40. straight, direct, right, good
**Matching Questions**
Match the word in the first column with the corresponding word in the second column.

41. dire  a. easily deceived
42. sham  b. to get with great effort
43. gibe  c. to distribute by measure
44. eke  d. to turn aside from a course
45. crux  e. to disable or disfigure
46. dupe  f. having dreadful consequences
47. mete  g. to make taunting remarks
48. veer  h. basic or central feature
49. maim  i. impostor
50. awry  j. askew

**Practice Activities**
Now that you know these short but important words, they’ll turn up everywhere! You may also find, especially if you make a deliberate effort, that ample opportunities arise for you to try these words out for yourself.

Because of their commonality, give yourself the challenge of both listening for them when you watch the news, for example, and inserting them into your own common speech. Confide in your friend that things have really gone awry in your household (we hope not) or that your mother-in-law has become the bane of your existence.
Answers

Words in Context
The narrator begins to explain his situation by saying that he can cite, by way of an example, that he is one of the biggest dupes that ever lived. We may infer that cite means to quote (a situation or example). We can conclude that dupe(s) refers to someone who was deceived, based on the statement, “I wondered how I didn’t see his scheming ways all along.” This same statement, along with the term “so-called friend,” can help the reader to infer that sham means someone who is scheming, or not loyal. When the narrator says that he tried to straighten things out but that they went awry anyway, it is clear that awry must mean when things go off course, or askew. When the narrator ekes out the truth, he says that it involved a lot of prying, so we can assume that eke means to get something like the truth with a lot of difficulty. By the time the narrator gets the truth, he says the situation has already become too dire. We can infer that dire means extreme or unsalvageable because the narrator says that there was no way to get his money back at that point. The last sentence describes the narrator’s “so-called friend” as a miserable bane of his existence, or a source of constant misery and annoyance.

Sentence Completion
1. awry. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. cite. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. bane. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. acme. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. dupe. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. elite. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. mete. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. crux. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. eke. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. moot. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. dire. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
12. gibe. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
13. veer. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. maim. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. staid. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. roil. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
17. sham. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
18. oust. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
19. purge. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
20. vie. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
Synonyms

21. e. average. Acme is the highest point of achievement or development. It is not at all average but, rather, the best one can do. Average would not be a synonym.

22. b. view. To cite is to quote or reference as an authority or an example. While cite may sound like sight and site which do relate more closely to view, view would not be a synonym for cite.

23. b. lightweight. To be (an) elite is to belong to a group or class of people who enjoy superior status. The elite are chosen, superior, or the best in a given arena. Lightweight would not be a synonym of elite.

24. a. soil. To purge is to free from impurities, to remove or to eliminate. In law, it means to clear someone of a charge. Soil means to dirty or taint and would not be a synonym of purge.

25. d. hero. A sham is something or someone false that is purported to be genuine. A hero generally possesses sincere, noble, and admirable qualities. Hero would not be a synonym for sham.

26. b. steer. To veer is to turn aside from a course, direction or purpose. Swerve and deviate also describe such derailing action. Steer implies guided control and would not be a synonym.

27. b. tired. Staid characterizes sedate dignity, and serious, sober propriety. It also means fixed or permanent. Fatigue is not necessarily associated with being staid and so, tired would not be a synonym.

28. c. cheat. To roil is to disturb or displease. It also refers to making a liquid muddy by stirring up sediment. Though one may become vexed or roiled if cheated by another, cheat is not a synonym of roil.

29. d. twist. Bane describes fatal injury or ruin. Twist would not be a synonym, as it is not necessarily the cause of harm, ruin, or death.

30. b. elevated. Awry describes a position that is turned or twisted toward one side. Askew and amiss also convey this sense. To elevate means to lift up or raise, not twist or turn, and so would not be a synonym.

Antonyms

31. acme. Acme means the highest point of achievement or development, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

32. purge. Purge means to free from impurities or guilt, the opposite of soil or condemn. It also means to get rid of, the opposite of retain or keep.

33. moot. Moot means a hypothetical case, opposite of actual. It also means not longer of actual significance, opposite of the rest of the words listed.

34. oust. Oust means to eject or force out, opposite of the words listed, which mean to keep and comfort in a protected space.

35. roil. Roil means to make cloudy or stir up, the opposite of calm or clarify. It also means to disturb or vex, the opposite of please, or comfort.

36. staid. Staid means sedate, sober, fixed, or permanent, the opposite of the words in the group.

37. sham. A sham is something or someone false or an impostor, the opposite of the words in the group.

38. elite. To be elite is to enjoy superior status, the opposite of the words in the group.

39. bane. Bane is fatal injury or the cause of ruin or death, the opposite of the positive, redemptive words in the group.

40. awry. Awry means turned or twisted, or off the expected or correct course, the opposite meaning of the words in the group.
Matching Questions
41. f
42. i
43. g
44. b
45. h
46. a
47. c
48. d
49. e
50. j
**VOCABULARY LIST 10: SHORT WORDS THAT MEAN A LOT**

**Across**
1. oust  
4. mete  
6. dupe  
8. maim  
11. awry  
13. elite  
15. dire  
17. vie  
18. gibe  
19. crux  

**Down**
2. sham  
3. staid  
5. bane  
7. purge  
9. acme  
10. moot  
12. cite  
14. eke  
16. roil  
17. veer
What does careful description add to a given conversation, story, or explanation? Adjectives add color, definition, and detail to any piece of writing. They serve to qualify and clarify the subject at hand. Consider a mental image coming into focus as additional information is put forth: “There was a man. There was an old man. There was an old, dolorous man.” In this way, adjectives help us account for specificity when trying to conjure up a figure, picture, mood, or situation in our minds.

CHAPTER SUMMARY
Adjectives are typically understood as words used to describe nouns, that is, people, places, things, and ideas. But, beyond this textbook definition, we may begin to think about the role of adjectives in our experiences as readers, writers, speakers, and listeners.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 11: Adjectives**

Vocabulary List 11: Adjectives

- audacious
- churlish
- demure
- dolorous
- epicurean
- extenuating
- facetious
- feisty
- flippant
- imperious
- jaunty
- myriad
- oblique
- ornate
- palpable
- prodigious
- prone
- relevant
- sardonic
- vehement

---

**Across**

2 something that’s meant to be funny
3 shy, modest, reserved
6 relating to
8 touchable, perceptible
9 devoted to the pursuit of sensual pleasure, gourmet
10 bold, adventuresome, insolent
14 commanding
17 indirect, circuitous
18 innumerable
19 surly

**Down**

1 apt, disposed to
glib, lacking appropriate respectfulness
4 stylish, lively
5 spunky, showing aggressiveness, liveliness
7 tempering, moderating
11 elaborate, sumptuous
13 intense, desperate
15 amazing, massive
16 cynical, scornful
audacious (ō·ˈdā-shəs)  
(adj.)  
fearlessly, often recklessly daring, adventurous, and brave; unrestrained by convention or propriety; insolent  
The student’s ________ behavior—swearing at the teacher in class—resulted in detention for a week.

churlish (ˈchər-lish)  
(adj.)  
boorish or vulgar; having a bad disposition; surly; difficult to work with; intractable  
The child was immediately punished for his bad attitude and ________ behavior.

demure (di·ˈmyūr)  
(adj.)  
modest and reserved in manner or behavior; shy  
Having always been attracted to the shy and quiet type, James predictably fell for the ________ woman to whom he was introduced.

dolorous (ˈdō-lə-rəs)  
(adj.)  
exhibiting sorrow, grief, or pain  
My friend’s ________ expression could be explained by the painful divorce process in which she found herself.

epicurean (e·pi·ˈkyu·rē·ən)  
(adj.)  
dedicated to the pursuit of sensual pleasure, especially to good food and comfort  
The ________ feast lasted for hours as those in attendance enjoyed fine wine, delicacies, and the host’s beautiful home.

extenuating (ik·sten·yə-wät·ing)  
(adj.)  
lessened the magnitude or seriousness of, especially by making partial excuses  
After hearing the entire story surrounding the supposed crime, the judge realized there existed ________ circumstances that put the situation in perspective.

facetious (fə·sē·shəs)  
(adj.)  
playfully jocular  
“Don’t be ________,” requested the girl’s mother, who was tired of her daughter’s refusal to take the situation seriously.

feisty (ˈfi·stē)  
(adj.)  
touchy; quarrelsome; full of spirit; frisky or spunky  
Our new young puppy was extremely ________, jumping playfully all over the apartment and licking our faces.

flippant (ˈfli·pənt)  
(adj.)  
marked by disrespectful levity or casualness; pert  
Her ________ remarks during the interview cost her the job as she failed to demonstrate the necessary respect for her potential coworkers.

imperious (im·ˈpir·ē·əs)  
(adj.)  
arrogantly domineering or overbearing; dictatorial  
“It is my ________, ruthless political strategy that will conquer all contesting factions in this city,” exclaimed the egocentric, overconfident mayor.

jaunty (ˈjón·tē)  
(adj.)  
having a buoyant or self-confident air; brisk; crisp and dapper in appearance  
The ________ groom looked dapper in his stylish suit and hat as he confidently entered the church on his wedding day.
myriad (ˈmɪr-əd)  
(adj.)  
constituting a very large, indefinite number; innumerable; composed of numerous diverse elements or facets  
(noun)  
a great number, countless  
The ________ species of fish, plants, and microorganisms populate the ocean.

oblique (əˈblék)  
(adj.)  
having a slanting or sloping direction, course, or position; indirect or evasive; devious, misleading, or dishonest  
While the president’s ________ political maneuvers were expedient, they did not earn him the trust of the general public.

ornate (ɔrˈnāt)  
(adj.)  
elaborately and often excessively ornamented; showy or flowery  
The actress’s ________ style of dress was tastelessly overdone.

palpable (ˈpāl-pə-bal)  
(adj.)  
capable of being handled, touched, or felt; tangible  
The tension in the room was so ________, one felt it could be cut with a knife.

prodigious (prəˈdijəs)  
(adj.)  
impressively great in size, force, or extent; extraordinary; marvelous  
A ________ talent like the great tennis player Pete Sampras doesn’t come along very often.

prone (ˈprōn)  
(adj.)  
lying with the front or face downward; having a tendency; inclined  
Chloe is quite clumsy and ________ to accidents.

relevant (ˈrē-lə-vənt)  
(adj.)  
having a bearing on or connection with the matter at hand  
Gabriel brought up a point that at first didn’t seem ________, but later, we all realized that it had a direct bearing on the situation.

sardonic (särˈdä-nik)  
(adj.)  
scornfully or cynically mocking  
I tend to gravitate toward people with a ________ sense of humor because I, too, have a cynical outlook.

vehement (ˈvē-ə-mənt)  
(adj.)  
characterized by forcefulness of expression or intensity of emotion or conviction; fervid; intense  
His reaction was ________, so it was clear there was no convincing him to change his mind.

Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 11 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

When my young daughter, Tanya, came home one day claiming she had adopted a lost puppy, I thought this an audacious move. After all, we live in a small two-bedroom apartment, and further, Tanya knows her sister is prone to allergies, especially around long-haired dogs like this pup she found. Under normal circumstances, I probably would have demanded we let the dog go. Yet, there were extenuating circumstances that seemed relevant to
the decision I had to make. The playful and feisty puppy reminded us so very much of Jelly, the playful dog next door who, three months ago, was tragically killed by a speeding car. The loss had stayed with my daughters and me; our sadness was palpable, filling our home with gloom. And so, I agreed that the sweet stray would become a member of our family.

Sentence Completion
Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 11 into the following sentences.

1. Because James is quite shy, he tends to get along with girls who have a ________________ nature.

2. Her ________________ behavior was shocking, as she was normally shy and reserved.

3. The ________________ circumstances helped to justify why the normally conscientious student didn’t turn in his term paper.

4. I enjoyed my job until I had to work closely with the ________________ Louise—she is impossible to get along with!

5. I tend to like people with a ________________ disposition, as I like a personality with spirit and spunk.

6. It was no surprise that the day Kathryn lost her job, she had a ________________ expression on her face.

7. Jason is so playful that it is hard to tell when he is being ________________ or serious.

8. It was clear by Paul’s ________________ behavior that he didn’t care about the project.

9. Andrew’s ________________ tastes inspired him to go to cooking school and open his own restaurant.

10. As she served for the match, no one made a sound, and the tension in the air was ________________.

11. There are ________________ cultural activities to choose from in New York City.

12. Because of my pale skin, I am ________________ to getting freckles in the sun.

13. I had to leave my last job because of my ________________ boss; he thought that the best way to manage a department was by being dictatorial.

14. Bob’s ________________ strategies may work in the short term, but eventually, his sneaky dealings will get him in trouble.

15. Her coworkers respond well to Lauren’s ________________ demeanor, as everyone likes to be around someone who is self-confident.

16. Your ________________ denial is so insistent that I no longer believe that you are responsible.

17. The room was too ________________ for my taste with its gaudy, elaborate décor.

18. The ________________ storm was so huge, I thought it the most intense weather we had experienced all year.
19. He never seemed open to new experiences; he and his _________________ attitude mocked everything even remotely unfamiliar.

20. My past experiences proved _________________ to the situation once I was able to make the connection.

Synonyms
The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. audacious
   a. daring
   b. defiant
   c. insolent
   d. fearless
   e. churlish

22. demure
   a. prudish
   b. graceful
   c. shy
   d. solemn
   e. modest

23. dolorous
   a. demure
   b. sorrowful
   c. unpleasant
   d. painful
   e. distressful

24. flippant
   a. careless
   b. flexible
   c. disrespectful levity
   d. rudely casual
   e. pert

25. ornate
   a. showy
   b. flowery
   c. epicurean
   d. highly decorated
   e. excessively ornamented

26. jaunty
   a. dapper
   b. buoyant
   c. self-confident
   d. athletic
   e. stylish

27. palpable
   a. substantial
   b. touchable
   c. weighable
   d. tangible
   e. sensitive

28. sardonic
   a. sarcastic
   b. prodigious
   c. cynical
   d. caustic
   e. scornfully mocking
### VOCABULARY LIST 11: ADJECTIVES

29. **vehement**
   a. fervid  
   b. passionate  
   c. relevant  
   d. zealous  
   e. forceful

30. **myriad**
   a. plenty  
   b. numerous  
   c. indefinite  
   d. countless  
   e. oblique

#### Antonyms

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>conservative, restrained, reserved, timid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>polite, poised, tractable, malleable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>respectful, mindful, serious, courteous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>joyful, blissful, happy, mirthful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>finite, numerical, limited, homogenous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>clear, straight, honest, direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>plain, unadorned, modest, simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>irrelevant, disconnected, moot, unrelated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>intangible, imperceptible, subtle, untouchable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>ordinary, weak, unimpressive, pedestrian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Choosing the Right Word

Circle the word in bold that best completes the sentence.

41. I found your casual, *(flippant, feisty)* attitude during the formal ceremony very disrespectful.

42. “Might makes right!” declared the *(facetious, imperious)* dictator.

43. It’s difficult to know whether you are serious when you are so *(facetious, jaunty)* with me.

44. It was very *(audacious, churlish)* to stand up before the crowd and recklessly begin speaking without having prepared at all.

45. I can’t work with you in this professional environment when you are so *(extenuating, churlish)*.

46. How can you afford your *(epicurean, extenuating)* tastes; they are so lavish and luxurious!

47. Can’t you forgive me considering the *(extenuating, feisty)* circumstances?

48. Did you notice how *(dolorous, feisty)* she became when the touchy subject came up?

49. His *(oblique, jaunty)* answers to my simple questions left me at a loss for understanding.
50. She became (prodigious, prone) to illness when her immune system began to fail her.

Practice Activities
Go to your favorite magazine and, while reading an article, story, or any considerably lengthy feature, circle all the adjectives (words that describe or qualify nouns) you come across. Take note of the nouns (people, places, things) they describe or qualify, and then ask yourself how the presence of adjectives contributes to the piece in specific cases, and also as a whole.

The next time you write an e-mail or an old-fashioned letter to a friend, see what happens to the quality and character of your prose when you make a point of including carefully selected adjectives, including those you learned in Vocabulary List 11.
Tanya's move of bringing home the puppy was seen as audacious, or bold and even reckless, considering both the size of her family's apartment and the fact that her sister is prone, or susceptible, to allergies. Yet, Tanya's reasonable mother is willing to consider the relevant (having bearing on the matter at hand) extenuating circumstances, which allow her to make an exception.

All things considered (namely her family's palpable, or tangible gloom when the neighbor's dog died), it wouldn't be a bad idea for this feisty puppy—so obviously playful and full of spirit—to stay.

1. demure. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
2. audacious. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
3. extenuate. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
4. churlish. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
5. feisty. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
6. dolorous. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
7. facetious. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
8. flippant. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
9. epicurean. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
10. palpable. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
11. myriad. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
12. prone. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
13. imperious. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
14. oblique. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
15. jaunty. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
16. vehement. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
17. ornate. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
18. prodigious. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
19. sardonic. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.
20. relevant. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word's definition.

Audacious means fearlessly or recklessly daring. Defiant and insolent convey similar meanings, whereas churlish means vulgar and would therefore not be a synonym of audacious.

Demure describes modest and reserved behavior. Graceful describes pleasing, attractive movement, and though one may find modesty graceful, it would not be a synonym for demure.

Dolorous means exhibiting pain, grief or sorrow. Demure means mild-mannered or shy and would not be a synonym.

Flippant means marked by disrespectful levity. Being overly casual in a disrespectful manner or being pert or careless would also describe this attitude. Flexible means able to bend, change, or move, and would not be a synonym.
25. **c. epicurean.** Ornate means elaborately and excessively ornamented. Something ornate may also be considered showy or flowery. Epicurean means devoted to the pursuit of sensual pleasures and thus would not be a synonym.

26. **d. athletic.** Jaunty means having a buoyant or self-confident air. It also means having a crisp, dapper, stylish appearance. Athletic, meaning good at sports, would not be considered a synonym.

27. **e. sensitive.** Palpable means capable of being handled, touched or felt. All the words in the group except sensitive denote this characteristic. Sensitive means highly receptive to senses (including, but not exclusively to, touch) and is not a synonym.

28. **b. prodigious.** Sardonic means scornfully or cynically mocking. All the words and groups of words above suggest this disposition except for prodigious. Prodigious means extraordinary or impressively great in size or force and would not be a synonym.

29. **c. relevant.** Vehement means characterized by forcefulness or intensity. The word choices are all useful vocabulary terms that have similar meanings to vehement except for relevant, which means having a connection with the matter at hand. Relevant would not be a synonym.

30. **e. oblique.** Myriad means constituting a very large or indefinite number. Oblique would not be considered a synonym, as it means indirect or evasive.

**Antonyms**

31. **audacious.** Audacious means bold, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

32. **churlish.** Churlish means vulgar or difficult to work with, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

33. **flippant.** Flippant means marked by disrespectful levity or casualness, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

34. **dolorous.** Dolorous means marked by sorrow, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

35. **myriad.** Myriad means indefinite, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

36. **oblique.** Oblique means slanting or misleading, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

37. **ornate.** Ornate means elaborately ornamented, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

38. **relevant.** Relevant means having a bearing on, or a connection with, the matter at hand, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

39. **palpable.** Palpable means capable of being touched or felt, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

40. **prodigious.** Prodigious means impressively great or extraordinary, the opposite of the meaning of the words in the group.

**Choosing the Right Word**

41. **flippant.** Context clue is that flippant means marked by disrespectful casualness. Though being overly feisty may also be considered disrespectful, considering the context clues, flippant is the stronger choice.

42. **imperious.** Context clue is that imperious means dictatorial and domineering.
43. facetious. Context clue is that facetious means playfully jocular; when one is facetious, it may sometimes be difficult to determine whether one is joking or not.

44. audacious. Context clue is that audacious means recklessly daring.

45. churlish. Context clue is that churlish means difficult to work with, specifically on the grounds of vulgarity (that would be problematic in the mentioned “professional” environment).

46. epicurean. Context clue is that epicurean means devoted to the pursuit of sensual pleasure, especially fine food.

47. extenuating. Context clue is that extenuating means lessening the magnitude or seriousness of (in this case, whatever the speaker did for which she asks forgiveness).

48. feisty. Context clue is that feisty means touchy or quarrelsome (argumentative being a synonym thereof).

49. oblique. Context clue is that oblique means indirect or evasive; such responses would not yield clarity or understanding.

50. prone. Context clue is that prone means susceptible or inclined toward.
VOCABULARY LIST 11: ADJECTIVES

Across
2 facetious
3 demure
6 relevant
8 palpable
9 epicurean
10 audacious
14 imperious
17 oblique
18 myriad
19 churlish

Down
1 prone
2 flippant
4 jaunty
5 feisty
7 extenuating
11 ornate
12 dolorous
13 vehement
15 prodigious
16 sardonic

DE U P E V A N T R O E X A L S T Y T A N E P U I A N S T Y Y

DE M U R E L O I J F

R E L E V A N T P A L P A B L E

X E P U I

T A N S

E P I C U R E A N T Y Y

N T Y Y

A U D A C I O U S

P F A C E T I O U S

T O D

I M P E R I O U S E

N R N L A H

G O A O R E

D T R D M

I E O O B L I Q U E

G U N N

M Y R I A D S I T

O C

C H U R L I S H S
An acronym is a word formed from the initial letter or letters of each of the successive parts (or major parts) of a compound term. The roots *acr* or *acro* mean *beginning*, thus, the adoption of the *first* letters of each word in a term work together to make a single new word: an acronym.

In a way, understanding acronyms is like breaking a code. Each of the letters, or initials in the acronym, represent an entire other word. For example, the letters in *scuba* stand for Self Contained Underwater Breathing Apparatus. And, it makes sense: That’s really what scuba diving is all about, right?
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You will use 19 words from the vocabulary list to solve this puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 12: Acronyms**

ASAP  CAT scan  CD-ROM  dinks  DOS  ESL  FAQ  ISP  laser  LAN  HTML  modem  moped  RAM  radar  REM  snafu  scuba  URL  yuppie

**Across**

2 a type of computer access memory that can be accessed randomly
3 the coding on many Web page documents
6 local area network
8 a compact disc that contains data a computer can read
9 self-contained underwater breathing device
10 English as a second language
13 a company that provides access to the Internet
14 a device that generates electromagnetic radiation
16 as soon as possible
17 frequently asked questions
18 rapid eye movement

**Down**

1 the address of documents and resources on the Web
4 a motor-powered bike that can also be pedaled
5 a mix up
7 a device that converts signals from digital to analog to transmit over phone lines
8 a 3D image of a body structure
11 disk operating system
12 a young, professional adult who works and lives in or near a city
15 radio detecting and ranging
ASAP  (ä-s-ä-p)
(adv.)
an abbreviation for As Soon As Possible
Please don’t waste any time; I need you to complete this assignment _________.

CAT scan  (‘kat-’skan)
(noun)
Computerized Axial Tomography scan—a three-dimensional image of a body structure made from a series of cross-sectional images and put together by a computer
John had to check into the hospital after his car accident for a routine ________, to make sure he did not have a concussion.

CD-ROM  (sē-dē-’rām)
(noun)
Compact Disk-Read Only Memory—a compact disk that contains data a computer can read
That SAT study guide comes with a ________ you can put in your computer to practice test questions.

dink  (a subset of yuppies)  (’dihk)
(noun)
double income couple, no kids
I confess, we are sometimes a bit envious of the thirty-something ________ next door, though we would never trade in our children for their wealth.

DOS  (’dōs)
(noun)
the Disk Operating System used on personal computers (PCs)
When you are having a technical problem with your personal computer, it is often a good idea to return to __________, the opening screen, to see what may be wrong.

ESL  (ē-es-el)
(noun)
English as a Second Language
It is critical that we have ________ programs in our schools so that the immigrant youth population may improve their English and not be at a disadvantage in the classroom.

FAQ  (ef-ä-kyū)
(noun)
an abbreviation for Frequently Asked Questions
Before you raise your hand, please note that in the back of the Driver’s Ed manual you will find the ________ section and perhaps your question will be included there.

ISP  (i-es-pē)
(noun)
Internet Service Provider—a company that provides internet access to consumers
It may be difficult to select an ________, when there are so many—Compuserve, AOL, Earthlink—from which to choose.

laser  (’lā-zar)
(noun)
light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation—a device that generates electromagnetic radiation
It is now possible to remove your tattoos with ________ surgery where no needles are involved: only light and radiation.
LAN  (l-ā-n)  
(noun)  
Local Area Network—a network of directly connected machines that are close together and provide high-speed communication over, for example, fiber optics or coaxial cable (like for phone service or cable TV)
I’ve been satisfied with my ______ as I never have any trouble making local calls, and the customer service is excellent.

HTML  (āch·tē·em·'el)  
(noun)  
Hyper Text Markup Language—a system of tagging documents to define a document’s structure and appearance on a Web page
Each Web page on our website must be coded in ______ before it gets posted on the Internet.

modem  (ˈmō-dəm)  
(noun)  
modulator/demodulator—a device used to convert digital signals into analog signals—and vice versa—for transmissions over phone lines
This old ______ on my computer is so slow; it connects to the Internet at only 14,400k. The newer models connect at up to 56,000k.

moped  (ˈmō-ped)  
(noun)  
motor pedal—a small, light, motor-powered bike that can also be pedaled
While I have never ridden a ______, I imagine it is just like riding a bike, only motorized!

radar  (ˈrā-där)  
(noun)  
radio detecting and ranging—a device that sends out radio waves and processes them for display; usually used for locating objects or surface features of an object (such as a planet)
What’s amazing is how I was able to pick up your signal on my ______ even though you were out of sight.

RAM  (ˈram)  
(noun)  
Random Access Memory (on a computer)—a type of computer memory that can be accessed randomly
With so many programs installed on your home computer, it’s no wonder you no longer have enough ______ available for new files.

REM  (ˈrem)  
(noun)  
Rapid Eye Movement (in sleep)—a rapid movement of the eyes associated with REM sleep and dreaming
I guessed you were dreaming in your deep sleep when I saw your eyes twitching under their lids in ______.

scuba  (ˈskū-ba)  
(noun)  
self-contained underwater breathing apparatus—equipment used for breathing underwater
Jim packed up all his ______ gear, including his flippers, goggles, and tank, before he left for his trip to the Caribbean.
snafu  (snaˈfū)  (noun)
situation normal, all fouled up
As it turns out, we ran into a major ________ and we need your help!

URL  (uˈarˈel)  (noun)
Uniform Resource Locator—the address of documents and resources on the Internet
Our auto company’s ________ is not too original, but it is sure easy to remember: www.cars.com.

yuppie  (ˈyə-pē)  (noun)
young urban professional—a young, college-educated adult who works and lives in or near a large city
Since when have you become such a ________, with your upscale clothes and cars, and at such a young age!

Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 12 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Check the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

I finally took it upon myself to become more knowledgeable when it comes to using my home computer. My resolution set in when I was trying to attach a simple text file to an e-mail document and ran into a frustrating snafu. Everything froze and I thought my PC had crashed. Quickly turning to the FAQ section in my user’s manual, I realized that the problem was really with my modem. That’s why my e-mail wasn’t going through. I called my ISP to verify my diagnosis of the problem. The customer service agent on the phone said he had to check on it, but that he would call me back ASAP. Though he said that it would only take a second, I found myself waiting for hours. Born of my own impatience, my goal to become more independently computer-savvy was born!

Sentence Completion
Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 12 into the following sentences.

1. I love my ________ because it’s as small as a bike but much faster.
2. An unexpected ________ caused us to be late.
3. I know it’s short notice, but can you have the report to me ________?
4. In my state, it’s illegal to use a ________ that tells you when a police car is nearby.
5. When I came to the United States, I took ________ classes to learn English.
6. I had to have a ________ to see if I had suffered a concussion while sparring with my boxing partner.
7. This neighborhood used to be full of artists until all of the ________ from Wall Street moved in.
8. Before calling customer service, see if you can find the answer to your question in the ________’s section.
9. The first time I went ________ diving, I was amazed at all the underwater life I saw.
10. If you look up a nonprofit organization on the Internet, the ________ most likely ends in “org.”
11. I bought a [ ] that had the entire world atlas on a single disk!

12. I took a class in [ ] coding so that I would know how to build a Web page.

13. There was no incision involved when I had [ ] surgery on my eyes, only light amplification from radiation.

14. We know a couple of [ ] who have a lot of money to spend; they have no children to support, and both his and her jobs are quite lucrative.

15. Your [ ] made me know you were in deep sleep.

16. My [ ] is offering a good deal now so you may want to switch and have them be your service provider.

17. I think your disk may not be working due to a malfunction in [ ].

18. The [ ] was busy putting in new phone lines in our area after the storm did so much damage.

19. You can’t connect to the Internet on that old laptop computer because it doesn’t have a [ ].

20. When I bought my new computer, I increased the amount of [ ] so that it would have enough memory to handle all these programs.

Matching Questions
Match the acronym in the first column with the corresponding definition in the second column.

21. dinks | a. self-contained underwater breathing apparatus
22. ISP | b. rapid eye movement
23. FAQ | c. young urban professional
24. laser | d. as soon as possible
25. CD-ROM | e. double income couple, no kids
26. ASAP | f. compact disk read only memory
27. RAM | g. light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation
28. moped | h. Internet service provider
29. HTML | i. English as a second language
30. radar | j. hyper text markup language
31. scuba | k. modulator/demodulator
32. LAN | l. random access memory
33. REM | m. situation normal, all fouled up
34. yuppie | n. radio detecting and ranging
35. URL | o. motor pedal
36. CAT scan | p. local area network
37. DOS | q. computerized axial tomography scan
38. ESL | r. disk operating system
39. FAQ | s. frequently asked questions
40. snafu | t. uniform resource locator (World Wide Web address)
**True/False**
In the space provided, write a T if the sentence is true, and an F if the sentence is false. If the sentence is false, cross out the misused word and write the correct word from Vocabulary List 12 above it.

41. _____ The operating system used in IBM compatible computers is called **DOS**.
42. _____ The computerized axial tomography scan one might receive to check for internal injury is a **CD-ROM**.
43. _____ Double income couples without any children are sometimes referred to as **dinks**.
44. _____ Before I left for my diving adventure in Indonesia, I purchased some state of the art **radar** gear.
45. _____ If you want something done quickly, you may ask for it **ASAP**.
46. _____ At the new planetarium, I saw an amazing **laser** light show amplified on the ceiling!
47. _____ Since she newly immigrated to the United States, she is considered a **FAQ** student.
48. _____ The **LAN** section of a user’s manual may be of tremendous use if you have questions and are struggling to put something together—a bicycle, for example.
49. _____ My computer is overloaded with so many programs that I probably have to upgrade my **HTML**.
50. _____ Having the correct **URL** enabled me to get to the website with ease.

**Practice Activities**
It is *relatively* easy (though no piece of cake) to remember what an acronym stands for because the letters that make it up serve as clues. For example, when completing the matching section, you may have quickly associated the acronym ISP with its definition—Internet Service Provider—since the corresponding letters I-S-P probably jumped out at you. The next step in committing these acronyms to your vocabulary repertoire is *really* understanding what they mean. Try to go beyond simply relying on remembering what each letter stands for.

A suggestion is to check out a website or a trade magazine relating to the subject of the acronym. And just because you may *never* scuba dive doesn’t mean your vocabulary and literacy won’t benefit from visiting a scuba website to learn how all the gear is a self-contained underwater breathing apparatus. Flipping through *Wired* magazine or the Science section of the *New York Times* might allow you to more deeply, in context, read explications and applications of some of the acronyms relating to science and technology.
Answers

Words in Context
When this computer novice’s computer freezes, it may be understood as a snafu: A normal situation of trying to attach a file becomes fouled up! For guidance, he turns to the FAQ section of the user’s manual thinking that perhaps others have had similar problems and asked similar questions. The fact that his e-mail was not going through indicates that perhaps the modem was the source of the problem, as a modem allows for the necessary connection to the Internet. The logical company to contact at that point would be one’s ISP: the Internet Service Provider. The customer service representative explains that he will get back to the customer momentarily: as soon as he is able, or, ASAP. As the customer impatiently waits, he resolves to learn to rectify such snafus on his own.

Sentence Completion
1. moped. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. snafu. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. ASAP. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. radar. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. ESL. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. CAT scan. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. yuppie. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. FAQs. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. scuba. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. URL. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. CD-ROM. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
12. HTML. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
13. laser. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. dinks. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. REM. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. ISP. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
17. DOS. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
18. LAN. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
19. modem. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
20. RAM. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

Matching
21. e
22. h
23. s
24. g
25. f
26. d
27. l
28. o
29. j
30. n
31. a
32. p
33. b
34. c
35. t
36. q
37. r
38. i
39. s
40. m
True/False

41. True
42. False, correct word is CAT scan
43. True
44. False, correct word is scuba
45. True
46. True
47. False, correct word is ESL
48. False, correct word is FAQ
49. False, correct word is RAM
50. True
**VOCABULARY LIST 12: ACRONYMS**

**Across**
2 RAM
3 HTML
6 LAN
8 CD-ROM
9 scuba
10 ESL
13 ISP
14 laser
16 ASAP
17 FAQ
18 REM

**Down**
1 URL
4 moped
5 snafu
7 modem
8 CAT scan
11 DOS
12 yuppie
15 radar
CHAPTER SUMMARY
In this chapter, you will learn words that don’t fit neatly into any particular category, but are used occasionally in adult-level writing and very often found on standardized tests. It can sometimes seem as if test makers have some magical list of words that they think will trip up the average test taker. Of course, that is not the case, but if you had never encountered these words before seeing them on a test, they could certainly be intimidating. Perhaps many of these words are somewhat familiar from your reading or studies, but they are the type of words that you skip over and hope you don’t need to know to understand the reading passage. By learning and mastering the words in this chapter, you can give yourself the extra advantage you need on tests and in your reading.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 13: Commonly Tested Words**

anomaly
badinage
brusque
cower
diffident
dross
extricate
fodder
garrulous
hyperbole
malapropism
pertinacity
plausible
prehensile
rancor
resolute
ruminant
simian
stolid
succor

**Across**
3 animosity
5 apathetic, impassive
6 related to, or resembling an ape
7 to cringe
9 ponder, muse
10 waste
11 possible
12 adapted for wrapping around, grabbing
13 bashful
16 misuse
17 to set free, disentangle
18 wordy

**Down**
1 blunt, brief
2 deviation from the norm
4 exaggeration
5 aid, assistance
8 banter
11 obstinance
14 determined
15 coarse food for cows and horses
anomaly (ə-ˈnä-mə-lē)
(noun)
abnormality; irregularity; deviation from the norm or usual
The one year the company did not break even was just an ________.

badinage (ba-ˈdān-ˈäzh)
(noun)
playful and joking conversation or banter
The two men never met without beginning a little ________ that entertained us all.

brusque (ˈbrəsk)
(adj.)
abrupt, blunt, or short in manner or speech
His ________ manner was often mistaken for rudeness by people who did not know him better.

cower (ˈkau-ər)
(verb)
to shrink and tremble, as from someone’s anger or threats; to cringe
It was unnerving to watch the dog ________ in the corner when he misbehaved.

diffident (ˈdi-fə-dənt)
(adj.)
modest, shy, reserved, bashful, humble
Her ________ smile seemed to indicate that she would dance if only someone would encourage her.

dross (ˈdrās)
(noun)
the worthless part of something that is separated from the better part; waste; garbage
The cook trimmed the fillet and swept the ________ away.

extricate (ˈek-strə-kāt)
(verb)
to set free or release; to disentangle, as from a difficulty or embarrassment
She hung up the phone and wondered how she would ever ________ herself from really having to attend the luncheon.

fodder (ˈfā-dər)
(noun)
dry, coarse food for cattle, horses, or sheep, like hay or straw; often also used in expressions unrelated to animals
We were waiting by the barn for the new ________ to be delivered.

garrulous (ˈgär-ə-ləs)
(adj.)
overly talkative about unimportant things; chattering
I regretted striking up a conversation with him when I remembered how ________ he can be.

hyperbole (hī-pərˌbō-lē)
(noun)
exaggeration for effect, not to be taken literally
He often spoke with ________, as when he said he was so hungry he could eat a horse.

malapropism (ma-ˌlā-prā-pī-ˈzəm)
(noun)
a ridiculous or humorous misuse of words, usually due to a resemblance in sound
She was quite amusing with her frequent ________ (s), like when she excused herself from the table to go to the laboratory.
pertinacity (per·tən·ˈa-sə-tē) (noun)
firm or unyielding adherence to some purpose; stubbornness; persistence
No matter what anyone said, there was no way to reason with his ________.

plausible (ˈplō-zə-bəl) (adj.)
seemingly true and acceptable, but usually used with implied disbelief; possible
The excuse seemed ________, so we had to accept their apology for not attending our dinner party.

prehensile (prē·hen·tə-səl) (adj.)
adapted to grasp, seize, or hold
Chimpanzees and humans both have a ________ hand.

rancor (ˈraŋ-kər) (noun)
a continuing and bitter hatred or ill will
The negotiators worked for peace among the opposing factions, despite their obvious ________.

resolute (ˈre-zə-lūt) (adj.)
determined; firm of purpose; resolved
I would try and stop you, but I can see you are ________ in your decision.

ruminate (rū·mə-nət) (verb)
to meditate on or ponder something; to think over
One could see him ________, over the question for a few moments before he answered.

simian (ˈsī-mē-ən) (adj.)
dealing with apes or monkeys; ape-like
The researcher was investigating several aspects of ________ behavior.

stolid (ˈstā-ləd) (adj.)
showing little or no emotion or awareness; unexcitable; expressionless
We wondered how he could remain so ________ upon hearing such awful news.

succor (ˈsə-kər) (noun)
aid; help; assistance, especially that which relieves and ends stress, need, or a difficulty
She gladly offered ________ when he had nowhere else to turn.

Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 13 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

I will never forget the day I accompanied Professor Mackey into the apes’ facility for the first time. He delighted in introducing me to all their unique simian behaviors. There were several apes who remained quite diffident during our visit, but most went about their normal behavior, and a few even came forward to greet us. One charmer even offered us a piece of food with his prehensile hand. The professor pointed out the leader, who remained a stolid observer of all the proceedings in the cage. Mackey explained that when the leader did move about, all the apes would become scared and excited and even cower in the corner. Two of the apes fought vio-
lently during our visit, but fortunately their rancor seemed focused solely on each other. Undoubtedly, the most fascinating resident was one of the males named Yankee. When the professor closed the cage door after he had brought the apes their lunch, Yankee came to the door and looked for the keyhole. I watched him *ruminate* there for a few minutes, staring intently at the door and the keys on the bench beside us. He then tried every imaginable way to *extricate* himself from the cage, and regardless of how impossible it would be without the keys, he seemed *resolute* enough to continue for hours. Indeed, the professor said he was still trying when he returned later that evening.

**Sentence Completion**

Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 13 into the following sentences.

1. Maleek was ________________ when he was younger, but now he is confident and outgoing.

2. Her story seems ________________, but I still don’t believe her.

3. Because dogs do not have a ________________ hand, they have to grab things with their jaws.

4. New Yorkers are stereotyped as being ________________, but this is not usually the case.

5. “He is the very pineapple of politeness,” is a famous ________________ said by a character in the play The Rivals.

6. I was unable to ________________ myself from an uncomfortable situation when I realized I was seated next to the woman I had beat out for a promotion.

7. Because there were so many stray animals, the shelter could not provide ________________ to all of them.

8. He was known for using ________________ to make his point, but sometimes, it became tedious to hear him exaggerate every situation.

9. Natalie’s turning in the report late is really a(n) ________________, as she is always on time with her work.

10. I think that sometimes horses get tired of eating the same ________________ every day, but experts say that the animals don’t get bored of it.

11. When Hannah makes up her mind to do something, she is ________________ about it and doesn’t stop until she has achieved her goal.

12. I try to avoid getting into a conversation with Judy, as she is so ________________ that I can’t ever seem to end a conversation with her.

13. During the trial, the defendant remained so ________________ that no one could tell what he was thinking.

14. It is his nature to ________________ over new ideas; he does not make quick decisions.

15. My dog might surprise you with her ________________; she will not give up when it comes to getting attention.
16. We kept the few minerals we found in the sample and just brushed the ________________ away.

17. His stooped posture, long arms, and wild hair cast an almost ________________ aspect to his appearance.

18. Nothing pleases me more than a little ________________ with someone who has a quick wit.

19. The ________________ between them had existed for years, and it was rumored to have begun from some long forgotten argument.

20. The booming thunder made the two children ________________ under the covers and reach to hold onto one another.

**Synonyms**

The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. **pertinacity**
   a. persistence  
   b. stubbornness  
   c. loudness  
   d. determination

22. **ruminate**
   a. ponder  
   b. think over  
   c. meditate about  
   d. clean

23. **brusque**
   a. courteous  
   b. brief  
   c. abrupt  
   d. blunt

24. **rancor**
   a. hatred  
   b. fondness  
   c. dislike  
   d. contempt

25. **cower**
   a. cringe  
   b. tremble  
   c. rip  
   d. shrink away

26. **succor**
   a. aid  
   b. assistance  
   c. help  
   d. stress

27. **plausible**
   a. deceitful  
   b. true  
   c. believable  
   d. possible

28. **diffident**
   a. shy  
   b. reserved  
   c. furious  
   d. bashful

29. **anomaly**
   a. irregularity  
   b. abnormality  
   c. deviation  
   d. average
30. simian
   a. ape-like
   b. concerning apes
   c. having to do with animals
   d. having to do with monkeys

Antonyms
Choose the word from Vocabulary List 13 that means the opposite, or most nearly the opposite, of the following
groups of words.

31. treasure, valuables, prize
32. fact, literal truth, exactness
33. debate, discourse, argument
34. excited, enthusiastic, upset
35. love, friendship, affection
36. quiet, solemn, serious
37. cuisine, delicacy, feast
38. careless, indecisive, uncertain
39. catch, imprison, confine
40. impossible, unlikely, false

Choosing the Right Word
Circle the word in bold that best completes the sentence.

41. It is a very interesting offer, but I will need to (extricate, ruminate) on it a bit before I give you my answer.

42. The lecturer explained the tremendous advantages that our earliest ancestors had over other species—the evolution of a (stolid, prehensile) hand.

43. She showed amazing (pertinacity, hyperbole) at the meeting and eventually succeeded in persuading the entire room.

44. He acted very (simian, diffident) when we approached, and we wondered if our forwardness made him uncomfortable.

45. The employee was warned about being so (dross, garrulous) on the phone, and was advised to be more professional and direct.

46. The pitcher who made the all-star team was not just a (anomaly, malapropism); he was the cream of the crop.

47. The press was delighted when he came out of the building, but he was (brusque, badinage) with them and rushed out a moment later.
48. I believe your theory is (prehensile, plausible), but I still think we should do a little more research.

49. The neighbor was shocked at the boy’s strange (diffident, simian) behavior and decided to notify his parents later that day.

50. All they could do was (cower, succor) in fear as the bears approached them; they were so afraid that they couldn’t even run away.

Practice Activities
Write a letter to a friend, teacher, or coworker using at least 5–7 of the words from this chapter’s Vocabulary List. Perhaps your letter could be a description of an unusual visit (like this chapter’s visit to the apes), or a problem you have noticed that needs addressing. Look back over the list and try to see a few connections between the words. When an idea comes to you, go with it. The most important thing is to try and use as many new words as possible in the correct manner.

Try to discover as many alternate forms of the words from the word list as you can. For example, dif-fident is an adjective used to describe someone who is shy or reserved, and diffidence is the noun form that identifies that shyness or modesty. Jot down as many alternate form of the words as you can guess, and then check the words in a dictionary. Can you use each of the forms of the words in a sentence?
Answers

Words in Context
The paragraph is a recollection of a visit to see the apes and the behaviors noticed by the narrator; thus we should certainly conclude that simian means apelike or concerning apes. When we read that some apes remained diffident but others came forward to greet the visitors, we can understand that diffident could mean shy or reserved. The friendly ape that offers food in his prehensile hand must surely have a hand that is capable of holding something. Since the leader of the apes remains a stolid observer of all the activities, we can guess that he is showing no emotion or expression, because he is juxtaposed to his fellow apes who get excited. The apes that become scared when the leader moves about cower in the corner, so we can understand that they are cringing and trembling in fear of him. The two apes that fight during the visit apparently have rancor only for each other, so we should know that rancor means hatred or ill will. The ape Yankee seems to be staring at the door and trying to figure out a means of escape, so we can understand that ruminate means to think over or ponder. Yankee’s attempts to extricate himself from the cage, despite it being impossible without the keys, indicate that extricate must mean free or release. Finally, since we are told Yankee is resolute enough to continue his attempt for hours, we can understand that resolute must mean determined and firm of purpose.

Sentence Completion
1. diffident. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. plausible. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. prehensile. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. brusque. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. malapropism. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. extricate. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. succor. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. hyperbole. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. anomaly. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
10. fodder. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. resolute. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
12. garrulous. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
13. stolid. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. ruminate. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. pertinacity. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. dross. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
17. simian. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
18. badinage. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
19. rancor. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
20. cower. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
**Synonyms**

21. c. loudness. Pertinacity means firm or unyielding adherence to some purpose. Since loudness means the audible volume of something, it is not a synonym.

22. d. clean. Ruminate means to think something over. Since clean means to wash or make neat, it is not a synonym.

23. a. courteous. Brusque means being short or abrupt in manner or speech. Since courteous means polite and gracious, it is not a synonym.

24. b. fondness. Rancor means continuing hatred or ill will. Since fondness means warm affection, it is not a synonym.

25. c. rip. Cower means to cringe or tremble in fear. Since rip means to tear or shred something, it is not a synonym.

26. d. stress. Succor means aid or assistance in a time of need. Since stress means tension or pressure, it is not a synonym.

27. a. deceitful. Plausible means seemingly true and acceptable. Since deceitful means dishonest and fraudulent, it is not a synonym.

28. c. furious. Diffident means shy and reserved. Since furious means violently angry and raging, it is not a synonym.

29. d. average. Anomaly means an irregularity or abnormality. Since average means usual or commonplace, it is not a synonym.

30. c. having to do with animals. Simian means ape-like or having to do with apes or monkeys. Since having to do with animals is too broad a definition, it is not a synonym.

**Antonyms**

31. Dross means the waste or worthless part of something, the opposite of the words listed.

32. Hyperbole means an exaggeration for effect, not to be taken literally, the opposite of the words listed.

33. Badinage means playful conversation or banter, the opposite of the words listed.

34. Stolid means showing little emotion or awareness, the opposite of the words listed.

35. Rancor means continuing hatred or ill will, the opposite of the words listed.

36. Garrulous means overly talkative about unimportant things or chattering, the opposite of the words listed.

37. Fodder means dry, coarse food for cattle, horses, or sheep, the opposite of the words listed.

38. Resolute means determined and firm of purpose, the opposite of the words listed.

39. Extricate means to set free or release, the opposite of the words listed.

40. Plausible means seemingly true and possible, the opposite of the words listed.

**Choosing the Right Word**

41. ruminate. Extricate means free or release, so surely the person will have to think over or ruminate on the offer.

42. prehensile. Context clues indicate that the hand evolved to be an advantage, so it is logical that it is capable of holding something, or prehensile.

43. pertinacity. Pertinacity means persistence or stubbornness, so undoubtedly, this quality is what helped her persist and eventually persuade the entire room.

44. diffident. Diffident means shy and reserved, so it is logical that he would act that way if the others made him feel uncomfortable when they met. But he would not act simian or ape-like.

45. garrulous. Garrulous means overly talkative and chattering, which would be something an employee might be warned against. Dross means the unusable part of something, or waste.

46. anomaly. Since the one good player stands out on the team, he or she must be an anomaly, or an abnormality or deviation from the norm. A malapropism is a humorous misuse of words that sound alike.
47. **brusque.** Brusque means abrupt, blunt, or short in manner or speech. Badinage is playful or joking banter.

48. **plausible.** Plausible means seemingly true and possible, so it would apply to a theory that the speaker believes but still wants to research further. Prehensile means adapted to seize or hold something.

49. **simian.** Simian means ape-like, so if the boy was acting that way, it may be an exaggeration, but the neighbor might easily be shocked and want to notify the parents. Diffident means shy and reserved, so that would not be shocking.

50. **cower.** Cower means tremble or cringe in fear, which could be an appropriate response to approaching bears. Succor is aid or assistance in a time of need.
### VOCABULARY LIST 13: COMMONLY TESTED WORDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Across</th>
<th>Down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 rancor</td>
<td>1 brusque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 stolid</td>
<td>2 anomaly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 simian</td>
<td>4 hyperbole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 cower</td>
<td>5 succor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 ruminate</td>
<td>8 badinage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 dross</td>
<td>11 pertinacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 plausible</td>
<td>14 resolute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 prehensile</td>
<td>15 fodder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 diffident</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 malapropism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 extricate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 garrulous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Across**

3 rancor
5 stolid
6 simian
7 cower
9 ruminate
10 dross
11 plausible
12 prehensile
13 diffident
16 malapropism
17 extricate
18 garrulous

**Down**

1 brusque
2 anomaly
4 hyperbole
5 succor
8 badinage
11 pertinacity
14 resolute
15 fodder

**Across Clues**

- DROSS
- PLAUABLE
- RUM INATE
- STEEL
- MAL AP ROP

**Down Clues**

- I N
- STEEL
- N T
- PRE H EN S I LE
- DIFFI N T R
- G A R R U LOUS

**Diagonal Clues**

- RANCOR
- U S IM I AN
- O PLAS I E
- E R T
- M A L A P R O P I S M
- O CO
- EX TRI CAT E
- E Y T
CHAPTER SUMMARY

This chapter introduces you to another group of words that are commonly found on standardized tests. No doubt you have encountered some of them before in your reading, but you may also be seeing many of the words for the first time. Be sure to say the words aloud to yourself as you read over the list, as this helps commit them to memory.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 14: More Commonly Tested Words**

- addle
- ambivalent
- bevy
- disconsolate
- guffaw
- genteel
- guttural
- inert
- insouciance
- mutable
- obtuse
- omniscient
- pallor
- partisan
- purloin
- resonant
- rubric
- smidgen
- sycophant
- wallow

**Across**

1. steal
2. indulge
3. group of women
4. small amount
5. a person who tries to get ahead by flattering people of wealth or power
6. a category
7. having conflicting or divided feelings
8. all-knowing
9. throaty
10. confuse or fluster
11. carefree, easy-going

**Down**

1. dull or dense
2. vibrant, full, resounding
3. paleness, waness, pastiness
4. melancholy
5. strongly in favor of one side or one political party
6. hearty chuckle
7. stationary, inactive
8. refined, polite
9. changeable

---

213
addle  (ˈa-dəl)  
(verb)  
to confuse, fluster, or muddle  
He likes to _________ his opponent by being overly confident.

ambivalent  (əmˈbi-və-lənt)  
(adj.)  
having at the same time two conflicting feelings or emotions toward another person or thing, such as love and hate; having divided feelings about something or someone; equivocal; uncertain  
I am _________ about inviting her to the wedding.

bevy  (ˈbe-vē)  
(noun)  
a group of girls or women; or a flock of birds  
Because Ivan was trying to find a date for the prom, he was delighted to see that there was a large _________ at my birthday party.

disconsolate  (dɪsˈkæn(t)səˈlət)  
(adj.)  
hopeless, sad, melancholy, dejected  
The grieving child was _________ when her mother passed away.

genteel  (jɛnˈtɛ(ə)l)  
(adj.)  
refined, polite, elegant, gentlemanly, or ladylike  
Though Deborah was raised in a carefree way—her parents let her do whatever she wanted—her manners are quite _________.

guffaw  (ɡəˈfó)  
(noun)  
a loud, rough burst of laughter  
Martin tends to _________ rather than laugh quietly.

guttural  (ˈɡə-tə-rəl)  
(adj.)  
throaty; used to describe sounds that originate in the throat, like the k in kite  
When my dog wants to play, she tries to get your attention by making _________ noises, like the beginnings of a growl.

inert  (ɪˈnərt)  
(adj.)  
inactive, sluggish, without power to move  
It was so hot last Sunday that I remained _________; I lay on the couch all day and enjoyed the air conditioning.

insouciance  (ɪnˈsʊ-së-ən(t)s)  
(noun)  
carefree, unconcerned  
Her _________ at losing her job made us all think that she was independently wealthy.

mutable  (ˈmyʊ-ə-bəl)  
(adj.)  
changeable, unstable, variable  
Unfortunately, my schedule this week is not _________, as I have clients coming in from out of town that I must meet.

obtuse  (əbˈtüs)  
(adj.)  
dull, not sharp or acute; when used to describe a person, it means slow to understand or notice, or insensitive  
Even though Robert is a brilliant man, he can be _________ about the simplest of concepts.

omniscient  (əmˈni-shənt)  
(adj.)  
all-knowing; having universal knowledge of all things  
The Judeo-Christian God is believed to be _________.
pallor  (ˈpa-lər)  
(noun)  
lack of color; unnatural paleness, often used to describe a face
She was struck by the eerie ________ of the strange man who always peered out from the windows of his dark house.

partisan  (ˈpär-tə-zən)  
(adj.)  
strongly in favor of one side or political party; blindly or unreasonably devoted to a party
The senator knew he would not be able to persuade his ________ peers.

purloin  (pər-ˈlōın)  
(verb)  
to steal
Did you ________ that new coat you’re wearing? You can’t afford one like that!

resonant  (ˈrē-zən-ənt)  
(adj.)  
used to describe sounds, it usually means vibrant, full, ringing, intensified, resounding, rich
Everyone loved to hear his ________ bass voice fill the concert hall.

rubric  (ˈrū-brik)  
(noun)  
a formal way to say name or title, or a category of something; an established rule or tradition
We found what we were looking for under the general ________ of respiratory diseases.

smidgen  (ˈsmi-jən)  
(noun)  
a very small particle; an insignificant piece or amount
I am not sure what it does, but my aunt always adds a ________ of dill to the dish.

sycophant  (ˈsī-kə-fənt)  
(noun)  
a person who tries to get ahead by flattering people of wealth or power
Only a shameless ________ could tell the boss that his horribly ugly orange tie is nice.

wallow  (ˈwā-lō)  
(verb)  
to roll about pleasantly in water or mud; can also be used to mean to overindulge in something pleasurable
We watched the pigs ________ in the mud and listened to their squeals of delight.

**Words in Context**
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 14 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

After we rang the doorbell, someone let us in, and we immediately turned on our most genteel manners. We mingled a little with the adults and some of the other kids there, and no one seemed to realize that we were crashing the party. Our plan was working smoothly when Pete suddenly erupted with a loud guffaw after Joe whispered a wisecrack in his ear. Pete’s insouciance is one of the things we love about him, but sometimes such a happy-go-lucky attitude can be a problem. He can be absolutely obtuse about when and where he ought to restrain himself. When those around us quieted and cast disapproving stares in our direction, we wandered off in search of a bevy of young ladies to entertain. We found a few in the large dining room. Pete approached one with an oddly
attractive pallor to her face, which was accentuated by her beautiful dark eyes and gorgeous black hair. He made them all laugh within a few moments, and then Pete introduced us to the pale girl’s two friends. We asked the three of them to dance. Two said yes, but the third remained inert, so I stayed to talk to her. She was disconsolate. I soon learned she had recently broken up with the boy she had been dating and had come to the party only at her friends’ insistence. She had been making a few attempts to enjoy herself, but she was ambivalent about meeting anyone or trying to have a good time. Knowing that a good remedy for an aching heart can be two moving feet, I pulled her out onto the dance floor. By the end of the party, she was laughing and singing, and on the way out all three girls thanked the hostess for inviting such charming young gentlemen to dance with. She laughed and said it was her pleasure, but as we exited past the woman’s puzzled, smiling face, I could see her confusion. Of course, when Pete said this party had been better than her last and gave the woman a goodbye kiss, it did nothing but addle her further.

**Sentence Completion**

Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 14 into the following sentences.

1. I hate to be such a ________________, but it seems the only way to get the boss to notice the hard work I am doing is to make her feel like she is the genius who came up with the idea in the first place.

2. We suspected that the suspicious looking man in the dark sunglasses was attempting to ________________ the valuable sculpture.

3. His ________________ manners were a pleasant, new side to him we had not seen before.

4. The cord was unplugged and I knew the blades were ________________, so I thought it was safe to try and repair the fan.

5. The manager told all the new housekeepers that he did not want to see even a ________________ of dirt or dust anywhere in the hotel.

6. If a story is written from an ________________ point of view, the reader can learn what all of the characters are thinking.

7. Joe felt ________________ about hearing his best friend had been accepted at the university because it was so far from home.

8. Because the clay was still ________________, she was able to alter the nose of the statue to make it a better likeness.

9. The mother warned her children to avoid the mud, but she knew if they passed the big puddle in the back yard they would ________________ in it until they were filthy.

10. Even in the brightly lit laboratory, the unnatural ________________ of the corpse unnerved us.

11. Once it was clear that no rescue party would be coming, several of the survivors grew completely ________________, and it seemed nothing could ease their minds.

12. When the models posed for the picture, everyone could see what a ________________ of beauties they were.
13. If she can put aside her __________ beliefs for the sake of the public good, I think she will make an excellent governor.

14. I am working hard on the project, but if I answer the phone it will just __________ me and make me lose my train of thought.

15. I wish I had my brother’s __________ so I would not worry so much about finding a job this summer.

16. I think that goes under the general __________ of “things that will get you fired in under an hour.”

17. Jill’s new guitar has such a beautiful __________ tone.

18. I heard a __________ from across the room, and I knew my comical uncle must have been telling some of his jokes again.

19. The pain in my side was not __________; I felt sharp stabs of pain every time my torso twisted even just a bit.

20. Some strange __________ sound rose from the sleeping patient’s mouth.

**Synonyms**

The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. inert
   a. inactive
   b. sluggish
   c. boisterous
   d. incapable of moving

22. genteel
   a. polite
   b. soft
   c. refined
   d. well mannered

23. sycophant
   a. one who is rude to the boss
   b. one who flatters the boss
   c. one who always showers compliments on the boss
   d. one who offers to pick up the dry cleaning for the boss

24. wallow
   a. roll around in
   b. bask
   c. indulge
   d. avoid

25. insouciance
   a. a carefree attitude
   b. anxiety
   c. lightheartedness
   d. unconcern

26. resonant
   a. vibrant
   b. ringing
   c. resounding
   d. weak
Matching Questions
Match the word in the first column with the corresponding word in the second column.

27. smidgen
   a. crumb
   b. particle
   c. plenty
   d. drop

29. bevy
   a. group
   b. crowd
   c. bunch
   d. example

28. guffaw
   a. frown
   b. laugh
   c. giggle
   d. chuckle

30. rubric
   a. name
   b. crimson
   c. title
   d. category

Antonyms
Choose the word from Vocabulary List 14 that means the opposite, or most nearly the opposite, of the following groups of words.

31. sharp, acute, sensitive

32. explain, teach, illustrate

33. fixed, permanent, stable

34. impartial, unbiased, unprejudiced

35. certain, decided, sure

36. ignorant, naïve, limited in knowledge

37. joyful, happy, glad

38. rude, impolite, discourteous

39. color, brightness, tint

40. give, present, donate

41. inert  a. changeable

42. smidgen  b. throary

43. addle  c. group

44. guttural  d. inactive

45. obtuse  e. resounding
**Practice Activities**

Many of the words in this chapter’s vocabulary list have several synonyms. Find a good thesaurus and find the synonyms for each word. Try to list five synonyms for each word. If you have difficulty finding the word in the thesaurus, use an alternate form of the word (like resonate for resonant). Your synonyms may be one word long or you may choose to write a few words in a phrase that makes the meaning clear.

To practice your spelling skills, as well as your understanding of the meanings of the words from this chapter’s vocabulary list, construct another crossword puzzle. Choose one of the longer words to start with, and write it down in the middle of a page. Then find a word that you can connect to this word because they both share a letter, and write the second word going down through this word. Then try and connect a word to that word, and continue doing this until you have connected every word on the list. Draw boxes around all the letters (or just use graph paper), and place a number in the box with the first letter in each word. Finally, make a list of clues for your crossword puzzle for both the Across and the Down words. Can any of your friends solve your puzzle?

---

### VOCABULARY LIST 14: MORE COMMONLY TESTED WORDS

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>46. purloin</td>
<td>f. dull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. mutable</td>
<td>g. small particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. resonant</td>
<td>h. sad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49. bevy</td>
<td>i. confuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50. disconsolate</td>
<td>j. steal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Because the boys in this passage are trying their best to blend in at a fancy party they were not invited to, we can guess that when they put on their best 

3. **genteel.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

4. **inert.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

5. **smidgen.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

6. **omniscient.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

7. **ambivalent.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

8. **mutable.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

9. **wallow.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

10. **pallor.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

11. **disconsolate.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

12. **bevy.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

13. **partisan.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

14. **addle.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

15. **insouciance.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

16. **rubric.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

17. **resonant.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

18. **guffaw.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

19. **obtuse.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

20. **guttural.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
Synonyms
21. c. boisterous. Inert means not moving or not able to move, and boisterous means noisy and exuberant, which is not a synonym.
22. b. soft. Genteel means polite, refined, and gentlemanly or ladylike. You may have confused soft and its synonym gentle with genteel.
23. a. one who is rude to the boss. A sycophant is one who tries to get ahead by flattery. Choice a is the only choice that is not appropriate.
24. d. avoid. Wallow means to overindulge in something, making a spectacle of oneself, like the way a pig will roll about in the mud. Avoid means to steer clear of, so it is not a synonym.
25. b. anxiety. Insouciance is an easy-going and happy-go-lucky attitude. Since anxiety means painful uneasiness of the mind, or worry, it is not a synonym.
26. d. weak. Resonant is used to describe sounds and means vibrant, full, and resounding. Weak would not be a synonym because resonant sounds are strong, loud sounds.
27. c. plenty. A smidgen is a very small particle or amount. Since plenty means an abundance or full supply of something, it is not a synonym.
28. a. frown. A guffaw is a loud burst of laughter. Since a frown is a look of displeasure or disapproval, it is not a synonym.
29. d. example. A bevy is a group or flock. Since an example is a model or specimen of something, it is not a synonym.
30. b. crimson. A rubric is a formal word for name or category. Crimson is a deep red color.

Antonyms
31. Obtuse means dull and not sharp, or slow to notice, the opposite of the words listed.
32. Addle means to confuse, fluster, or muddle, the opposite of the words listed.
33. Mutable means changeable or variable, the opposite of the words listed.
34. Partisan means strongly devoted to one side in a conflict or a political party.
35. Ambivalent means having conflicting feelings about something, the opposite of the words listed.
36. Omniscient means all knowing, the opposite of the words listed.
37. Disconsolate means sad, dejected, and hopeless, the opposite of the words listed.
38. Genteel means refined, polite, and elegant, the opposite of the words listed.
39. Pallor means a lack of color, or an unnatural paleness, the opposite of the words listed.
40. Purloin means to steal, the opposite of the words listed.

Matching Questions
41. d
42. g
43. i
44. b
45. f
46. j
47. a
48. e
49. c
50. h
Across
2 wallow
5 bevy
7 smidgen
9 sycophant
10 rubric
12 ambivalent
14 omniscient
16 guttural
18 addle
20 insouciance

Down
1 purloin
3 obtuse
4 resonant
6 pallor
8 disconsolate
11 partisan
13 guffaw
15 inert
17 genteel
19 mutable
In this chapter, you will study some new words that are commonly used to discuss concepts and ideas in various fields such as philosophy, politics, and religion. Many of the words are also used every day in the newspaper or on television. Perhaps once you have mastered the words in this chapter, you too will begin to use them in your writing and speech, and someone will wonder if you yourself are a philosopher.

CHAPTER SUMMARY
Some of the most influential work done over the last few thousand years has been done not by anyone who built a famous building, won a great battle, or discovered a new land, but by people who pondered the world around them. They have investigated the nature of the world, explored the meanings of concepts like truth, honor, and love, and tried to determine the ultimate purpose of life. These people were philosophers, and their work and study is called philosophy. Everyone is a bit of a philosopher in his or her own right, because each of us must decide what values we will live by and what our life’s purpose is. Some people may think about these matters occasionally or very briefly, while others will spend their lives searching for answers.
Choose the word from the Vocabulary List that best fits into the crossword puzzle. You can check your answers at the end of the chapter following the answers to the questions.

**Vocabulary List 15: Philosophical Terms**
abstraction
altruism
antithesis
banal
dichotomy
dogma
dogmatic
empiric
erudite
hedonism
ideology
logic
paradigm
paradox
pragmatism
semantic
syllogism
tautology
teleology
tenet
utopia

**Across**
4 a statement that seems to contradict itself
6 a belief that is asserted to be true
7 a practical or realistic attitude
9 division of a subject into two opposite classes or aspects
10 the belief in a pleasure-seeking lifestyle
11 redundancy
12 the exact opposite
15 logical reasoning that leads to a conclusion
17 an example or model
18 paradise
19 the science of reasoning

**Down**
1 worn out by overuse, trite
2 a quack
3 official beliefs or teachings of particular politics, philosophy, or religion
4 unselfish concern for others
5 the belief in a pleasure-seeking lifestyle
8 theoretical idea or concept
13 “all natural processes occur for a reason”
14 scholarly, learned
15 subtle differences between word meanings
16 doctrines
**Vocabulary List 15: Philosophical Terms**

**abstraction** (abˈ-strak-shən) *(noun)*
something that is not concrete or tangible, but is more of a theoretical idea or concept, like truth or beauty
We were discussing our relationships when Franklin reminded us that love itself could be looked at as just an ________.

**altruism** (ˈal-tru-əzəm) *(noun)*
unselfish concern for the welfare of others
The couple’s ________ had an immeasurable effect on the entire community.

**antithesis** (anˈ-θi-thə-səs) *(noun)*
the exact opposite of something, or an extreme contrast
I was really hoping for a promotion, but I received its ________, a demotion to another office.

**banal** (bəˈnal) *(adj.)*
trivial, worn out by overuse, or used so commonly as to have lost all interest and novelty
Long after people had stopped saying “far out,” Tim continued to use the ________ expression.

**dichotomy** (dīˈkä-tə-mē) *(noun)*
the division of a subject into two opposite classes or aspects, such as internal and external
We were intrigued by all the interesting possibilities that the ________ of the experience presented: are ghosts real or illusions?

**dogma** (ˈdog-mə) *(noun)*
the official beliefs, principles, or teachings, such as those of a religion, political party, or philosophy, used most often with the added implication that these beliefs or teachings should be strictly adhered to
He lived faithfully by the ________ of his religion.

**empiric** (imˈpir-ik) *(noun)*
someone who begins a practice such as law or medicine without the proper professional education and experience; a popular slang term for this is a *quack*; or one who is ignorant of the scientific principles and relies completely on practical experience
Bethany recommended I see her friend for the pain in my back, but I had met him and was sure he was just an ________.

**erudite** (ˈer-ə-dīt) *(adj.)*
scholarly, learned, well read, having extensive knowledge
Her ________ opinion easily impressed the instructor and persuaded us all to agree with her.

**hedonism** (he-dənˈizəm) *(noun)*
the belief that everything in life should be done to bring pleasure; a pleasure-seeking lifestyle
The ________ we practiced in our youth brought us as many problems as it did pleasures.

**ideology** (iˈdē-ə-lē) *(noun)*
the doctrines, beliefs, or opinions of a person, group, or school of thought
He explained his ________ to us and then we better understood the way he chose to live.

**logic** (ˈlā-jik) *(noun)*
the science of correct reasoning used to discover truths, or any method of reasoning, whether it reveals true and valid statements or not
If we use some ________, I am sure we can figure out this riddle.
paradigm (ˈpar-ə-dīm)  
(noun)  
a pattern, example, or model  
After hours of fruitless discussion about the project,  
the director presented us with a _________  
that made our goal much clearer.

paradox (ˈpar-ə-dāks)  
(noun)  
a statement that seems contradictory, unbelievable,  
or absurd but may actually be true; or something  
that is not fully understood because of  
contradictory appearances, statements, or  
actions  
That is an interesting _________; I guess you really  
were lucky to be so unlucky.

pragmatism (ˈpra-gmə-tizəm)  
(noun)  
a way of thinking or an attitude that stresses the  
value of being practical, realistic, and useful  
We were all glad he showed such _________ at the  
meeting and that he was not too idealistic  
about achieving our goal in just a few weeks.

semantic (siˈman-tik)  
(adj.)  
concerning the meaning of something; usually used  
in discussing words and language and the  
subtle differences between the meanings of  
similar words  
The lawyers disputed the wording of part of the  
contract, but I did not have the patience to deal  
with _________ issues just then.

syllogism (ˈsi-lə-ji-zəm)  
(noun)  
a form of logical reasoning that begins with two true  
statements and ends with a logical conclusion  
drawn from them, using deductive reasoning,  
which proceeds from general statements to the  
specific  
Objects that can float in water are less dense than  
water, and I can float in water, so therefore I  
must be less dense than water. Is that a valid  
__________?

tautology (tōˈtā-ləˈjē)  
(noun)  
needless repetition of an idea in a different word or  
phrase; redundancy  
Can we eliminate any of this _________? We  
certainly know that the “requirements” are  
“necessary,” so can we just call them  
“requirements?”

teleology (teˈlē-əˈlē-je)  
(noun)  
the study of final causes; or the belief that all natural  
processes and events occur for a reason, and  
nature is directed by some kind of purpose  
Looking at the forest fire with _________, one can  
see how the fire renews and rejuvenates the  
forest in an essential way.

tenet (ˈte-nət)  
(noun)  
an opinion, principle, or belief that a person,  
religion, or school of thought believes and  
asserts to be true and important; a doctrine  
He did not question the _________ itself, but only  
asked that his teacher clarify the different  
implications this new doctrine had for daily  
life.

utopia (yūˈtō-pē-ə)  
(noun)  
a place or state of ideal perfection, usually imaginary;  
a paradise  
When we arrived at their camp by the river, it seemed  
to be an unbelievable _________.


Words in Context
The following exercise will help you figure out the meaning of some words from Vocabulary List 15 by reading context clues. After you have read and understood the paragraph, explain the context clues that helped you with the meaning of the vocabulary word. Refer to the answer section at the end of this chapter for an explanation of the clues.

It always inspires me to remember my old teacher. He was one of the few people who really believed we could make the world a better place, and he had this wonderful vision of a future utopia that he was absolutely convinced was inevitable. For him, altruism was not just some abstraction, some big word that you could discuss in a philosophy class and then forget about; it was a way of life. It was a basic tenet of his that each person should do all that they can to help others, and he certainly taught us well enough by his own example. But his pragmatism also kept him well grounded and focused on real solutions to local concerns, and perhaps that is why none of his critics could dismiss him. Many did not understand that the fabulous entertaining he did was all part of his mission and not just some selfish hedonism. Rather, he was motivating and rewarding his team, and you could not leave one of his parties without understanding his unique ideology a little better, resolved to commit even more fully to a life of public service.

Sentence Completion
Insert the correct word from Vocabulary List 15 into the following sentences.

1. The _________________ that we based this on is outdated, so we will need a new model for the upcoming project.

2. I know that she is certified as a “healer,” but I don’t trust her methods—I think she is just a(n) _________________.

3. Studying about Chinese culture did not prepare me for the ________________ between the two cultures that I experienced when I lived in Shanghai for a year.

4. As an inexperienced writer, her work was replete with _________________, but in time, she learned how to spot and eliminate redundancies.

5. This may sound like a _________________, but I think that standing in one place is more tiring than walking.

6. I tried to fill him with hope, the _________________ of despair, which is what he has been feeling ever since he lost his job.

7. My favorite science fiction book describes a _________________, a place that is perfect in its social, political, and moral characteristics.

8. Sandra’s _________________ has rubbed off on me, and now I am much more practical in my approach to life.

9. My _________________, or ideas about life and work, has been largely influenced by my parents.

10. Sophie is known for her _________________, as she donates a lot of time to help those in need.
11. One would think that most young people don't adhere to the popular _________________. “All humans are mortal, and I am human; therefore, I must be mortal,” because they act as if they think they're invincible.

12. One of the ________________ (s) of physical science says that no two objects can occupy the same space at the same time.

13. I wish I could abandon all my responsibilities, follow them down there on their vacation, and join them in their carefree ________________.

14. It was an ________________ opinion and I had to respect his thorough research, but nonetheless, I still disagreed and thought the procedure should be banned.

15. Can we use some ________________ and see if there is another conclusion that we can draw from the evidence?

16. It is not just a small ________________ mistake; you just introduced me as someone you work with, when we both know that I hired you to work for me.

17. In all the years I have known him, I have never known him to question the ________________ of his church.

18. He mocked us and told us we were foolish to spend our time discussing such a (an) ________________, but we knew that few things were more important than trying to better understand just what honor really meant.

19. I subscribe to a similar ________________, and I also believe that birds have an important purpose that would be well worth understanding.

20. It is amusing to hear some people use so many ________________ expressions that they probably have just learned from television.

Synonyms
The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

21. paradox
   a. mystery  
   b. contradiction  
   c. puzzle  
   d. clue

22. antithesis
   a. an opposite  
   b. a statement  
   c. the reverse  
   d. a contrast

23. semantic
   a. concerning the meaning of  
   b. related to the different definitions of  
   c. using too many words  
   d. distinguishing different contexts

24. tenet
   a. prejudice  
   b. belief  
   c. opinion  
   d. principle

25. hedonism
   a. pleasure-seeking  
   b. debauchery  
   c. solitude  
   d. indulgence
26. teleology  
   a. belief that nature is purposeful  
   b. belief that natural processes occur for a reason  
   c. belief that nature is haphazard  
   d. belief that everything that occurs in the natural world is part of some higher plan  

27. paradigm  
   a. model  
   b. pattern  
   c. example  
   d. drawing  

28. ideology  
   a. doctrines of a religion  
   b. beliefs of a political organization  
   c. behavior of a child  
   d. opinions of a person  

29. logic  
   a. confusion  
   b. reasoning  
   c. figuring out  
   d. analyzing the truth of something  

30. erudite  
   a. scholarly  
   b. knowledgeable  
   c. discourteous  
   d. well read  

Antonyms  
Choose the word from Vocabulary List 15 that means the opposite, or most nearly the opposite, of the following groups of words.  

31. unity, universality, oneness  
32. idealism, dreaminess, impracticality  
33. a professional, one who is properly trained, a qualified authority  
34. new, exciting, fresh  
35. selfishness, greediness, hostility  
36. concise writing, succinctness, speech that is not redundant  
37. a world of horrors, a “hell on Earth,” future world of suffering and misery  
38. ignorant, uneducated, illiterate  
39. hard fact, physical evidence, tangible object  
40. random set of beliefs, heresy, unorthodox beliefs
Choosing the Right Word
Circle the word in bold that best completes the sentence.

41. The two men were known for their wild (utopia, hedonism); they had a reputation for always eating at the best restaurants and cafes, and taking spontaneous vacations to exotic locales.

42. His speech was very (erudite, tautology), and he received good reviews for his display of such fine research.

43. Her volunteer work at the nursing home was just another example of her admirable (pragmatism, altruism).

44. It is a(n) (antithesis, tenet) that followers of the faith often have difficulty with.

45. I don’t know what to make of it; it sure seems like a (paradox, paradigm) to me.

46. Have you ever heard such a (banal, semantic) expression? I am just so tired of hearing that over and over again.

47. If you really analyze the first premise of that (abstraction, syllogism), you will see that the conclusion cannot possibly be valid.

48. She always closely followed the (dichotomy, dogma) of her religion, and often helped instruct others who had questions about it themselves.

49. Don’t panic. Let’s try and use a little (logic, paradox) and see if we can figure out what must have happened to the keys.

50. This place is like a little hidden (utopia, empiric) that we have been fortunate to find before anyone else ruined it.

Practice Activities
Go to the library and look up a book on philosophy. Not only will you read some interesting ideas by some of humankind’s best thinkers, but you will no doubt see the words from this chapter in the text, as well as many others that you may not recognize. Find ten new words that you do not know the definitions of, and look up those words in the dictionary. Then practice using each word in a sentence.

   Use an Internet search engine and look up some of the words from this chapter. Does the search engine have links for the word? Go to a few of those websites and see why they used that word. Is the word part of the name of the website, or is it just used in the text of the site. See how many words you can find from this list.
Answers

Words in Context
The reader can understand that the narrator’s former teacher’s optimistic belief in a utopia is a belief in a better world that lies somewhere in the future. One gets the sense that this place must be almost like a paradise where, finally, no one would need the kind of help the teacher always gives. Thus, we can understand from the context of the passage that altruism must be an admirable quality that means an unselfish concern for others, which would explain the teacher’s commitment to doing all he can for others and living a life of public service. We can conclude that an abstraction is a theoretical idea, but that the professor does not consider altruism to be just a word one only discusses in a philosophy class and does not practice. The narrator explains the teacher’s tenet is that one must always strive to do more for others, so we can conclude that tenet means an opinion or belief of a person, religion, or school of thought. Since the teacher’s pragmatism keeps him grounded and focused on practical efforts to help others, we should know that pragmatism is a way of thinking that emphasizes being realistic and useful. The teacher’s choice to celebrate and throw parties is defended as not being selfish hedonism, so we can assume that hedonism means a pleasure-seeking lifestyle or philosophy. Finally, since the narrator states that he understands his teacher’s unique ideology better after the celebrations, we can guess that ideology means those beliefs, opinions, or doctrines that he adheres to.

Sentence Completion
1. paradigm. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
2. empiric. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
3. dichotomy. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
4. tautology. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
5. paradox. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
6. antithesis. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
7. utopia. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
8. pragmatism. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
9. ideology. If you got this question wrong, you may have mistakenly chosen dogma, a close synonym of ideology. However, dogma implies a belief system that is more strictly adhered to, and the context of this sentence indicates that the belief system was only loosely adhered to.
10. altruism. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
11. syllogism. If you got this question wrong, you may have mistakenly chosen logic. It is true that logic is being used in the reasoning of the example but in the unique form of a syllogism. It also would be inappropriate to use logic in the blank because the next phrase asks if the piece of reasoning presented is logical, and thus, it would be somewhat repetitive to use logic.
12. tenet. If you got this question wrong, you may have mistakenly chosen dogma or ideology. Since tenet refers to a specific belief, and dogma and ideology refer to an entire set of beliefs, tenet would be the best answer because this example only presents one specific belief.
13. hedonism. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
14. erudite. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
15. logic. If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.
16. **semantic.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

17. **dogma.** Here, again, you may have chosen the closely related terms ideology or tenet. Tenet refers to one specific doctrine or teaching. The context of this sentence tell us that, for several years, the man in question has not questioned his church’s teachings, implying that the entire set of beliefs is being discussed. Dogma would be a better choice than ideology, because the man seems to strictly adhere to his church’s teachings. The connotation of ideology emphasizes the beliefs themselves, whereas the connotation of dogma stresses required obedience and adherence to the teachings of the religion or group.

18. **abstraction.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

19. **teleology.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

20. **banal.** If you got this question wrong, refer back to the word’s definition.

**Synonyms**

21. **d. clue.** Paradox means something that is hard to understand because it contains a contradiction. Since clue means a hint or slight indication toward solving some mystery, it is not a synonym.

22. **b. statement.** Antithesis means the exact opposite of something. Since a statement is a saying or an expression, it is not a synonym.

23. **c. using too many words.** Semantic means concerning the different meanings of closely related words. Using too many words is not a correct answer because it deals with the number of words involved and not the meanings of the words.

24. **a. prejudice.** A tenet is a belief, opinion, or principle that a person or an organized group holds to be true and important. A prejudice is a bias against something or a preconception prior to meeting or experiencing it, so it is not a synonym.

25. **c. solitude.** Hedonism is the belief that pleasure is the most important goal in life. Solitude is the state of being alone and by oneself, so it is not a synonym.

26. **c. belief that nature is haphazard.** Teleology is the belief that all natural processes and events happen for a reason, directed by some kind of purpose. Haphazard means accidental or careless, so choice c could not be a synonym.

27. **d. drawing.** Paradigm means a pattern or model, often used to help organize or conceptualize an idea. A drawing could serve the same purpose, but it always refers to a hand-drawn, visual presentation, so it is too specific and narrow to be a synonym.

28. **c. behavior of a child.** Ideology means the opinions or beliefs of a person, religion, or school of thought. Choices a, b, and d are appropriate synonyms, but behavior of a child is unrelated and not a synonym.

29. **a. confusion.** Logic is the science of using correct reasoning to discover a truth. Confusion is puzzlement or bewilderment, so it is not a synonym.

30. **c. discourteous.** Erudite means scholarly, learned, and having an extensive knowledge. Discourteous means rude and impolite, so it is not a synonym.

**Antonyms**

31. **dichotomy.** Dichotomy means the division of something into two opposite classes or aspects, usually for discussion or analysis, the opposite of the words listed.

32. **pragmatism.** Pragmatism means belief in the value of being practical, realistic, and useful.
33. **empiric.** An empiric is someone who begins a practice such as medicine or law without the proper professional education and experience, the opposite of the words listed.

34. **banal.** Banal means trite, hackneyed, and worn out by overuse, the opposite of the words listed.

35. **altruism.** Altruism is the unselfish concern for the welfare of others, the opposite of the words listed.

36. **tautology.** Tautology is the needless repetition of an idea in slightly different words, the opposite of the words listed.

37. **utopia.** A utopia is an imaginary place of ideal perfection, the opposite of the words listed.

38. **erudite.** Erudite means scholarly, knowledgeable, and well read, the opposite of the words listed.

39. **abstraction.** An abstraction is a concept or idea that is theoretical or hypothetical and is not material or physical, the opposite of the words listed.

40. **dogma.** Dogma is the officially recognized beliefs, principles, or teachings of a religion, political party, or philosophy, the opposite of the words listed.

41. **hedonism.** Hedonism can mean a pleasure-seeking lifestyle. Utopia means an imaginary perfect place.

42. **erudite.** Erudite means scholarly and knowledgeable. Tautology is the needless repetition of similar meaning words or phrases.

43. **altruism.** Altruism is the unselfish concern for the welfare of others, and is exemplified by volunteer work in a nursing home. Pragmatism is the attitude or belief that the practical, realistic, and useful are most important.

44. **tenet.** A tenet is a belief or principle of a person, religion, or school of thought. Antithesis is the exact opposite of something.

45. **paradox.** A paradox is a mystery, or something that is unclear or not fully understood because of some contradiction. A paradigm is a pattern, example, or model.

46. **banal.** Banal means worn out by overuse, or trite. Semantic means concerning the slightly different meanings of similar words.

47. **syllogism.** A syllogism is a specific form of logical reasoning that begins with two premises and derives a conclusion from them. An abstraction is something that does not exist in the physical world, but is rather a concept or theoretical idea.

48. **dogma.** Dogma is the official set of beliefs and teachings of a religion, political party, or philosophy. Dichotomy means the division of a subject into two opposite classes or aspects for analysis or discussion.

49. **logic.** Logic is the science of correct reasoning used to discover truths. A paradox is a puzzling statement that is difficult to fully understand because it contains a contradiction.

50. **utopia.** Utopia means a place of ideal perfection. Empiric means someone who lacks the necessary and proper training and experience to practice a profession.
**VOCABULARY LIST 15: PHILOSOPHICAL TERMS**

**Across**
4 paradox
6 tenet
7 pragmatism
9 dichotomy
10 hedonism
11 tautology
12 antithesis
15 syllogism
17 paradigm
18 utopia
19 logic

**Down**
1 banal
2 empiric
3 dogma
5 altruism
8 abstraction
13 teleology
14 erudite
15 semantic
16 ideology
Now that you’ve built your vocabulary and spelling skills, you’re ready to test them out. Take this posttest and compare your score to your pretest’s to see how far you’ve come. You should go back and review any words you forgot until you know every word in this book.
Spelling
Choose the word that is spelled correctly.

1. a. disinterrested  
   b. dissinterested  
   c. disinterested  
   d. disintirested

2. a. belligerent  
   b. belligarent  
   c. belligerrent  
   d. beligerent

3. a. rendezvoo  
   b. rendezvous  
   c. rondevous  
   d. rondezvoo

4. a. contraban  
   b. contriband  
   c. contrtraban  
   d. contraband

5. a. omnishint  
   b. omniscient  
   c. onmscient  
   d. omniscint

Choose the word that is misspelled.

6. a. euphemism  
   b. transcend  
   c. relentless  
   d. interogate

7. a. beneficiary  
   b. pergury  
   c. encryption  
   d. flippant

8. a. guffaw  
   b. extricate  
   c. anomaly  
   d. idealogy

9. a. synthosis  
   b. deferment  
   c. bigotry  
   d. larceny

10. a. biodegradable  
    b. philantrophy  
    c. protracted  
    d. malevolent

Sentence Completion
Write the word from Group 1 that best fits in the blank.
You can check your answers at the end of the posttest.

Group 1
imperious palpable antipathy brusque
plausible exhume aphorism purloin
prodigious succor guttural dire
dogma utopia malaise retrospect
parity venerate fluctuate benevolent

11. It is not a simple matter to
    __________________ a body from a grave; a
    judge has to deem that there is a very good rea-
    son for it.

12. I am generally a happy person, but during winter,
    I always experience a feeling of
    __________________.

13. Have you ever heard the
    __________________, “Absence makes the
    heart grow fonder”?
14. The author’s ________________ body of work was impressive to the novice writer, who hadn’t even published one book.

15. After the power failed, we realized the situation had grown ________________ and that we would need someone to come to our aid.

Write the word from Group 2 that best fits in the blank. You can check your answers at the end of the posttest.

Group 2
- capital
- affidavit
- illegible
- simian
- attribute
- pathos
- recapitulate
- naïve
- fiscal
- cower
- tenure
- database
- ambivalent
- construe
- mete
- myriad
- prone
- verify
- addle
- paradox

16. Some people like to ________________ in their seats as they watch a scary movie, but I’d rather be rapt by a good love story.

17. It’s very frustrating when Derek handwrites his memos, as they are completely ________________.

18. I always call the airlines to ________________ that my flight is leaving on time before I leave for the airport.

19. Selfishness is not a very desirable ________________, so I tried to make sure that my children understood the importance of sharing.

20. After our first date, I was ________________ about Jane, but I thought I would go out with her one more time anyway.

Choosing the Right Word
Circle the bold word that best fits into the context of the sentence.

21. The workers’ union and the board of directors finally decided to go to (arbitration, collusion) because their negotiations were fruitless.

22. I found the answer in the (FAQ, ASAP) section of the brochure.

23. I can’t read this memo because it is filled with (nepotism, jargon) that I don’t understand.

24. She is well known for her (syllogism, pragmatism), so I think she will be a very successful manager.

25. Everything was fine until we had a little (snafu, yuppie) while on the train.

26. I am sure I know the sound of that (addle, guffaw), so Joe must be here and it sounds like he is having a good time.

27. She can’t sell her car because there is still a (lien, tort) against it.

28. The hackers tried, but they could not figure out our company’s (cache, encryption) methods, so the files remain secure.

29. Let me tell you a very funny (anecdote, construe) about him.

30. The United States is hoping Spain’s government will (bequest, extradite) the criminals who have fled there.
Synonyms
The following exercise lists vocabulary words from this chapter. Each word is followed by five answer choices. Four of them are synonyms of the vocabulary word in bold. Your task is to choose the one that is NOT a synonym.

31. protracted
   a. extended
   b. forbidden
   c. drawn out
   d. lengthy

32. rancor
   a. hatred
   b. ill will
   c. dislike
   d. ignorance

33. recapitulate
   a. summarize
   b. introduce
   c. go back over
   d. review

34. rendezvous
   a. parting
   b. meeting
   c. engagement
   d. appointment

35. flippant
   a. too casual
   b. rude
   c. tired
   d. disrespectful

36. puerile
   a. childish
   b. silly
   c. immature
   d. cautious

37. archetype
   a. model
   b. replication
   c. example
   d. standard

38. relentless
   a. occasional
   b. unstoppable
   c. harsh
   d. continuing

39. purge
   a. cleanse
   b. eliminate
   c. ruin
   d. empty

40. cryptic
   a. hidden
   b. secret
   c. ambiguous
   d. ancient
Antonyms
Write the word in the blank that is the most nearly opposite of the words listed.

41. clear, unmistakable, easily read
42. give, restore, buy
43. exact words, literal meaning, unexaggerated speech
44. hidden, secret, possible to miss or pass by
45. sluggish, lethargic, inactive
46. fair hiring, promotions given to those most deserving, merit-based personnel decisions
47. remain constant, resist change, stay the same always
48. worldly, experienced, wise
49. selfishness, greediness, lack of concern for others
50. unfaithfulness, disloyalty, untrustworthiness

Word Pairs
Write S if the words are synonyms, or A if the words are antonyms.

51. vehement, blasé ______
52. stolid, staid ______
53. genteel, urbane ______
54. avant-garde, banal ______
55. altruism, hedonism ______
56. relentless, tenacious ______
57. evident, conspicuous ______
58. laudable, churlish ______
59. gregarious, diffident ______
60. benevolent, malevolent ______

Denotation and Connotation
The following words are all synonyms with the same denotation, but with different connotations. Write POS in the blank if the word carries a positive connotation, NEG in the blank if the word carries a negative connotation, and N if the word carries a neutral connotation.

Example
1. ______ Project ______ Enterprise
   ______ Scheme

Answer
1. Project carries a neutral connotation—the reader doesn’t have any idea who or what might be creating or working on the project. In contrast, enterprise carries a positive connotation—enterprise is often associated with a business venture or a new and exciting project, thus giving the word a positive connotation. In contrast, scheme carries a negative connotation—criminals and lawlessness are often associated with schemes.
61. _______ exorbitant _______ copious
62. _______ puerile _______ naïve
       _______ facetious
63. _______ loquacious _______ garrulous
64. _______ gregarious _______ jaunty
65. _______ collusion _______ consortium
66. _______ resolute _______ tenacious
       _______ relentless
67. _______ entrepreneur _______ empiric
68. _______ furtive _______ cryptic
       _______ incognito
69. _______ audible _______ resonant
70. _______ aficionado _______ partisan
71. _______ provocative _______ litigious
72. _______ bane _______ antipathy
73. _______ audacious _______ flippant
74. _______ feisty _______ vivacious
75. _______ relevant _______ tangential
       _______ non sequitur
**Answers**

**Spelling**
1. c. disinterested
2. a. belligerent
3. b. rendezvous
4. d. contraband
5. b. omniscient
6. d. Interogate should be spelled interrogate.
7. b. Pergury should be spelled perjury.
8. d. Idealogy should be spelled ideology.
9. a. Synthisis should be spelled synthesis.
10. b. Philanthropy should be spelled philanthropy.

**Sentence Completion**
11. exhume. Exhume means remove from a grave.
12. malaise. A malaise is a vague feeling of illness.
13. aphorism. An aphorism is a general statement of truth or opinion.
14. prodigious. Prodigious means very large or numerous.
15. dire. Dire means urgent or threatening.
17. illegible. Illegible means not able to be easily read.
18. verify. Verify means to establish the truth of something.
19. attribute. An attribute is a special quality or characteristic.
20. ambivalent. Ambivalent means having divided feelings, or having conflicting opinions about something.

**Choosing the Right Word**
21. arbitration. Arbitration is the process by which disputes are settled by a third party, in order to end fruitless negotiations.
22. FAQ. FAQ means Frequently Asked Questions, which is where one would find the answer one sought. ASAP is as soon as possible.
23. jargon. Jargon is the specialized vocabulary of an industry or interest group.
24. pragmatism. Pragmatism is the belief in, and emphasis on, the practical, possible, and useful.
25. snafu. Snafu means “situation normal, all fouled up.”
26. guffaw. A guffaw is a loud burst of laughter.
27. lien. A lien is a charge against property for the satisfaction of a debt imposed by the courts.
28. encryption. Encryption refers to the technology term for translating information into secret code.
29. anecdote. An anecdote is a short account of an interesting or humorous incident.
30. extradite. Extradite means to surrender an alleged criminal to the state or country where he or she can be tried.

**Synonyms**
31. b. forbidden. Protracted means extended, lengthy, or drawn out.
32. d. ignorance. Rancor is hatred, ill will, or dislike of something or someone.
33. b. introduce. Recapitulate means to summarize, go back over, or review.
34. a. parting. Rendezvous means a meeting, engagement, or appointment.
35. c. tired. Flippant means too casual, rude, or disrespectful.
36. d. cautious. Puerile means childish, silly, or immature.
37. b. replication. Archetype means model, example, or standard.
38. a. occasional. Relentless means unstoppable, harsh, or continuing.
39. c. ruin. Purge means to cleanse, eliminate, or empty.
40. d. ancient. Cryptic means hidden, secret, or ambiguous.
Antonyms
41. illegible. Illegible means not easily read, the opposite of the words listed.
42. purloin. Purloin means to steal, the opposite of the words listed.
43. hyperbole. Hyperbole means exaggerated speech or writing, the opposite of the words listed.
44. conspicuous. Conspicuous means highly visible, the opposite of the words listed.
45. vivacious. Vivacious means full of spirit and lively, the opposite of the words listed.
46. nepotism. Nepotism is the hiring and promoting of friends or family members, the opposite of the words listed.
47. fluctuate. Fluctuate means to change or vary, the opposite of the words listed.
48. naïve. Naïve means innocent, simple, and lacking knowledge of the world, the opposite of the words listed.
49. altruism. Altruism is the unselfish concern for the welfare of others, the opposite of the words listed.
50. fidelity. Fidelity means loyalty and trustworthiness, the opposite of the words listed.

Denotation and Connotation
61. Exorbitant carries a negative connotation, inferring excessive behavior, and is often associated with showy and ostentatious displays of wealth. Copious carries a positive connotation, since it means abundant and plentiful and is often associated with generosity.
62. Puerile carries a negative connotation, and is often used to condemn or criticize. Naïve usually carries a neutral connotation; it can be used to objectively describe someone or an idea, or it can be used with a negative connotation to criticize someone who was expected to have known something they did not know. Facetious carries a positive connotation, and it is used to describe playful, joking behavior, or to excuse an offensive remark, as in "I was just being facetious."
63. Loquacious carries a neutral connotation, as it means talkative, an attribute that could be either positive or negative depending on the speaker’s own subjective view. Garrulous, however, carries a negative connotation, as it means overly talkative and chattering about unimportant things.
64. Both of these words carry positive connotations. Gregarious means sociable, and jaunty means confident and presenting a sharp appearance.
65. Collusion carries a negative connotation, and is used to identify fraudulent or deceitful business conspiracies. Consortium carries a neutral connotation, as it simply means a coming together of two or more businesses for a specific purpose, and there is no implication that this purpose is either honest or deceitful.
66. Resolute carries a neutral connotation, and does not indicate whether the firmness of purpose indicated is directed toward a positive or negative end. Tenacious carries a slightly negative connotation and is often used to criticize negative stubbornness. Relentless also usually carries a negative connotation and is used to describe persistent efforts or assaults that are unwelcome.

Word Pairs
51. A
52. S
53. S
54. A
55. A
56. S
57. S
58. A
59. A
60. A
67. *Entrepreneur* carries a positive connotation, and identifies someone who takes on the challenge and risk of starting his or her own business. Empiric has a negative connotation because it identifies someone who, though he or she also shows initiative, begins a practice such as law or medicine without the proper training and experience, assuming they will learn on the job.

68. *Furtive* has a negative connotation, as it means done in a sly, stealthy, underhanded manner. *Cryptic* has a neutral connotation, and means secret or hidden, but with no implied ill will. Incognito has a positive connotation, because although it means disguised, it is rarely used to describe negative characters and often carries a connotation of good-hearted mischief or adventure.

69. *Audible* carries a neutral connotation, and simply means able to be heard. *Resonant* carries a positive connotation, as it describes sounds that are rich, full, and vibrant.

70. *Aficionado* carries a positive connotation, as it means a person who likes, knows about, and is devoted to a particular activity or thing. It is rarely used with any negative connotations, but rather is most often used as a compliment. *Partisan* has a negative connotation because it means strongly in favor of one view or political party, usually with the connotation of blindly following the party line, and not considering an issue on its own or in terms of the bigger picture.

71. *Provocative* carries a negative connotation, like its root word provoke. *Provocative* means exciting emotion in a negative way and likely to stir up action or cause a riot. *Litigious* carries a negative connotation also, and is used to describe something that is disputed and needs to be settled in court. The negative connotation arises from most people’s dislike of going to court, and the hassle and expense involved.

72. Both of these words have strong negative connotations. *Bane* means the source of continued annoyance or exasperation, or the cause of ruin or death. *Antipathy* means a revulsion or strong dislike of something.

73. *Audacious* carries a negative connotation. Though it means fearless, adventurous, and daring, it usually means recklessly so. *Flippant* also carries a negative connotation, as it is used to describe disrespectful levity or casualness.

74. *Feisty* carries a negative connotation, as it means full of spirit, but in a quarrelsome way. *Vivacious* carries a positive connotation because it means lively and full of spirit and is used as a compliment.

75. *Relevant* carries a positive connotation. It means related to, or concerning, the subject at hand, and implies that there is other material that is not relevant and therefore does not matter. *Tangential* carries a neutral or negative connotation, and describes something that is slightly related to the subject at hand. *Non sequitur* carries a negative connotation because a non sequitur is a statement that has no relation to the one before it and therefore is not a good conversation piece or argument.
How successful you are at studying has less to do with how much time you put into it than with how you do it. That’s because some ways of studying are much more effective than others, and some environments are much more conducive to studying than others. Another reason is that not everyone retains information in the same way. On the following pages, you will discover how to adapt your studying strategies to the ways you learn best. You will probably pick up some new preparation techniques for your test.
Learning Styles

Think for a minute about what you know about how you learn. For example, if you need directions to a new restaurant, would you:

- Ask to see a map showing how to get there?
- Ask someone to tell you how to get there?
- Copy someone’s written directions?

Most people learn in a variety of ways: seeing, touching, hearing, and experiencing the world around them. Many people find, however, that they are more likely to absorb information better from one learning source than from others. The source that works best for you is called your dominant learning method.

There are three basic learning methods: visual, auditory, and kinesthetic (also known as tactile).

- Visual learners understand and retain information best when they can see the map, the picture, the text, the word, or the math example.
- Auditory learners learn best when they can hear the directions, the poem, the math theorem, or the spelling of a word.
- Kinesthetic learners need to do—they must write the directions, draw the diagram, or copy down the phone number.

Visual Learners

If you are a visual learner, you learn best by seeing. Pay special attention to illustrations and graphic material when you study. If you color code your notes with colorful inks or highlighters, you may find that you absorb information better. Visual learners can learn to map or diagram information later in this chapter.

Auditory Learners

If you are an auditory learner, you learn best by listening. Read material aloud to yourself, or talk about what you are learning with a study partner or a study group. Hearing the information will help you to remember it. Some people like to tape-record notes and play them back on the tape player. If you commute to work or school by car or listen to a personal tape player, you can gain extra preparation time by playing the notes to yourself on tape.

Kinesthetic Learners

If you are a kinesthetic learner, you learn best by doing. Interact a lot with your print material by underlining and making margin notes in your textbooks and handouts. Rewrite your notes onto index cards. Recopying material helps you remember it.

How to Study Most Effectively

If studying efficiently is second nature to you, you’re very lucky. Most people have to work at it. Try some of these helpful study methods to make studying easier and more effective for you.

Make an Outline

After collecting all the materials you need to review or prepare for the test, the first step for studying any subject is to reduce a large body of information into smaller, more manageable units. One approach to studying this way is to make an outline of text information, handout material, and class notes.

The important information in print material is often surrounded by lots of extra words and ideas. If you can highlight just the important information, or at least the information you need to know for your test, you can help yourself narrow your focus so that you can study more effectively. There are several ways to make an outline of print material. They include annotating, outlining, and mapping. The point of all three of these strategies is that they allow you to pull out just the important information that you need to prepare for the test.
Annotating
Annotations help you pull out main ideas from the surrounding text to make them more visible and accessible to you. Annotation means that you underline or highlight important information that appears in print material. It also involves responding to the material by engaging yourself with the writer by making margin notes. Margin notes are phrases or sentences in the margins of print material that summarize the content of those passages. Your margin notes leave footprints for you to follow as you review the text.

Here is an example of a passage that has been annotated and underlined.

---

**STUDYING FOR SUCCESS**

Annotating
Annotations help you pull out main ideas from the surrounding text to make them more visible and accessible to you. Annotation means that you underline or highlight important information that appears in print material. It also involves responding to the material by engaging yourself with the writer by making margin notes. Margin notes are phrases or sentences in the margins of print material that summarize the content of those passages. Your margin notes leave footprints for you to follow as you review the text.

Here is an example of a passage that has been annotated and underlined.

---

**Location, Location, Location**

Find a quiet spot, use a good reading light, and turn the radio off.

**Find Quiet Places**

For many adult test takers, it’s difficult to find a quiet spot in their busy lives. Many adults don’t even have a bedroom corner that isn’t shared with someone else. Your quiet spot may be in a different place at different times of the day.

For example, it could be the kitchen table early in the morning before breakfast, your workplace area when everyone else is at lunch, or a corner of the sofa late at night. If you know you’ll have to move around when you study, make sure your study material is portable.

Keep your notes, practice tests, pencils, and other supplies together in a folder or bag. Then you can easily carry your study material with you and study in whatever quiet spot presents itself.

If quiet study areas are nonexistent in your home or work environment, you may need to find a space elsewhere. The public library is the most obvious choice. Some test takers find it helpful to assign themselves study hours at the library in the same way that they schedule dentist appointments, class hours, household tasks, or other necessary uses of daily or weekly time. Studying away from home or job also minimizes the distractions of other people and other demands when you are preparing for a test.

**Lights**

Libraries also provide good reading lights. For some people, this may seem like a trivial matter, but the eyestrain that can come from working for long periods in poor light can be very tiring—which you can’t afford when you’re studying hard.

At home, the bedside lamp, the semi-darkness of a room dominated by the television, or the bright sunlight of the back porch will be of little help to tired eyes.
Outlining
You are probably familiar with the basic format of the traditional outline:

I. Main idea 1
   A. Major detail
   B. Major detail
      1. Minor detail
      2. Minor detail
II. Main idea 2
   A. Major detail
   B. Major detail

You may have used an outline in school to help you organize a writing assignment or take notes. When you outline print material, you’re looking for the basic ideas that make up the framework of the text. When you are taking out the important information for a test, then you are looking for the basic ideas that the author wants to convey to you.

Mapping
Mapping is a more visual kind of outline. Instead of making a linear outline of the main ideas of a text, when you map, you make a diagram of the main points in the text that you want to remember. The following diagrams show the same information in a map form.

Make Study Notes
The next step after you have pulled out all the key ideas is to make notes from which you will study. You will use these notes for the intensive and ongoing study you’ll do over the period of time before the test. They’re the specific items that you targeted as important to know for the test. Your notes should help you understand the information you need to know and, in many cases, commit it to memory. You should be sure to include:

- the main ideas you underlined or highlighted in the text
- the main ideas and important details you outlined or mapped from the text
- specific terms, words, dates, formulas, names, facts, or procedures that you need to memorize

How Do You Make Study Notes?
Some people like to write study notes in the back pages of their notebooks or on paper folded lengthwise so that it can be tucked between the pages of a text or review book. This format is good to use for notes that can be written as questions and answers, cause and effect, or definition and examples. You can also make notes on index cards.
Using Index Cards
It can be very helpful to write your study notes—especially those that contain material to be memorized—on index cards. Vocabulary words are significantly easier to learn using index cards.

Advantages of making notes on index cards are:

- The information on each card is visually separated from other information. Therefore, it’s easier to concentrate on just that one item, separate from the surrounding text. You remember the look of a vocabulary word or a math equation more clearly when it is set off by itself.
- Cards are small and portable. They can be carried in a purse or a pocket and pulled out at any time during the day for review.
- Study cards can help you with the necessary task of memorizing. If you write the key word or topic you are trying to learn on one side, and the information you must know on the other side, you have an easy way to quiz yourself on the material. This method is especially good for kinesthetic learners, who learn by doing.

Making Memorizing Easier

There are many ways to take the drudgery out of memorizing information.

Take Small Bites of Time
Most people memorize information best when they study in small periods over a long period of time.

Memorizing facts from index cards that can be carried with you and pulled out for a few ten-minute sessions each day will yield better results than sitting down with a textbook for an hour straight. Index card notes can be pulled out in odd moments: while you are sitting in the car waiting to pick up your friend, during the 15 minutes you spend on the bus in the morning, while you wait to be picked up from school or work, and so on.

You’ll find that these short but regular practices will greatly aid your recall of lots of information. They’re a great way to add more study time to your schedule.

Break It Up
When you have a list to memorize, break the list into groups of seven or any other odd number. People seem to remember best when they divide long lists into shorter ones—and, for some reason, shorter ones that have an odd number of items in them. So, instead of trying to memorize ten vocabulary or spelling words, split your list into smaller lists of seven and three, or five and five, to help you remember them.

Create Visual Aids
Give yourself visual assistance in memorizing. If there’s a tricky combination of letters in a word you need to spell, for example, circle or underline it in red or highlight it in the text. Your eye will recall what the word looks like. With some information, you can even draw a map or picture to help you remember.

Do It Out Loud
Give yourself auditory assistance in memorizing. Many people learn best if they hear the information. Sit by yourself in a quiet room and say aloud what you need to learn. Or, give your notes to someone else and let that person ask you or quiz you on the material.

Use Mnemonics
Mnemonics, or memory tricks, are things that help you remember what you need to know.

The most common type of mnemonic is the acronym. One acronym you may already know is HOMES, for the names of the Great Lakes (Huron, Ontario, Michigan, Erie, and Superior). ROY G. BIV reminds people of the colors in the spectrum (Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue, Indigo, and Violet).

You can make a mnemonic out of anything. In a psychology course, for example, you might memorize the stages in death and dying by the nonsense word DABDA (denial, anger, bargaining, depression, and...
Take Small Bites of Time
Most people memorize information best when they study in small periods over a long period of time. Memorizing facts from index cards that can be carried with you and pulled out for a few ten-minute sessions each day will yield better results than sitting down with a textbook for an hour straight. You’ll find that these short but regular practices will greatly aid your recall of lots of information. They’re a great way to add more study time to your schedule.

Break It Up
When you have a list to memorize, break the list into groups of seven or any other odd number. People seem to remember best when they divide long lists into shorter ones—and, for some reason, shorter ones that have an odd number of items in them. So, instead of trying to memorize ten vocabulary or spelling words, split your list into smaller lists of seven and three, or five and five, to help you remember them.

Create Visual Aids
Give yourself visual assistance in memorizing. If there’s a tricky combination of letters in a word you need to spell, for example, circle or underline it in red or highlight it in the text. Your eye will recall what the word looks like.

Do It Out Loud
Give yourself auditory assistance in memorizing. Many people learn best if they hear the information. Sit by yourself in a quiet room and say aloud what you need to learn. Or, give your notes to someone else and let that person quiz you on the material.

Use Mnemonics
Mnemonics, or memory tricks, are things that help you remember what you need to know. The most common type of mnemonic is the acronym. One acronym you may already know is HOMES, for the names of the Great Lakes (Huron, Ontario, Michigan, Erie, and Superior). ROY G. BIV reminds people of the colors in the spectrum (Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue, Indigo, and Violet).
Note Cards
Make note cards with definitions for each kind of learning modality:

- visual
- auditory
- kinesthetic

Mapping
Here is an outline of the learning strategies covered in this chapter. Using the same information, make a map or diagram of the same material.

I. How to study most effectively
   A. Annotating
   B. Outlining
   C. Mapping

II. How to make study notes
   A. Notebook pages
   B. Index cards
      1. Reasons for using index cards

III. Memory methods
**Completed Sample Annotation**

**Take Small Bites of Time**
Most people memorize information best when they study in small periods over a long period of time.

Memorizing facts from portable index cards that can be carried with you and pulled out for a few ten-minute sessions each day will yield better results than sitting down with a textbook for an hour straight. You'll find that these short but regular practices will greatly aid your recall of lots of information. They're a great way to add more study time to your schedule.

**Break It Up**
When you have a list to memorize, break the list into groups of seven or any other odd number. People seem to remember best when they divide long lists into shorter ones—and, for some reason, shorter ones that have an odd number of items in them. So instead of trying to memorize ten vocabulary or spelling words, split your list into smaller lists of seven and three, or five and five, to help you remember them.

**Create Visual Aids**
Give yourself visual assistance in memorizing. If there's a tricky combination of letters in a word you need to spell, for example, circle or underline it in red or highlight it in the text. Your eye will recall what the word looks like.

**Do It Out Loud**
Give yourself auditory assistance in memorizing. Many people learn best if they hear the information. Sit by yourself in a quiet room and say aloud what you need to learn. Or, give your notes to someone else and let that person ask you questions and quiz you on the material.

**Use Mnemonics**
Mnemonics, or memory tricks, are things that help you remember what you need to know.

The most common type of mnemonic is the acronym. One acronym you may already know is HOMES, for the names of the Great Lakes (Huron, Ontario, Michigan, Erie, and Superior). ROY G. BIV reminds people of the colors in the spectrum (Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue, Indigo, and Violet).
Sample Mnemonics
DDVAA

Note Cards
Here are samples of how your note cards might look:

**FRONT OF CARD**

- Visual Modality
- Auditory Modality
- Kinesthetic Modality

**BACK OF CARD**

- learning by seeing
- learning by listening
- learning by doing

Mapping
Here is an example of how your map or diagram might look:

![Diagram showing various study methods and how they can be connected]
The following resources will help you build your vocabulary beyond the words in this book. In this list, you will find print material to help you on your way to further word study. Before you look at any of the books listed, you should get a good dictionary. For general reference at home, a collegiate or college dictionary will suffice. Try Merriam-Webster’s Collegiate Dictionary, 11th Edition. (Merriam-Webster, Inc., 2003). You can also refer to an online dictionary, such as Merriam-Webster’s online dictionary, found at www.m-w.com.
Recommended Books